

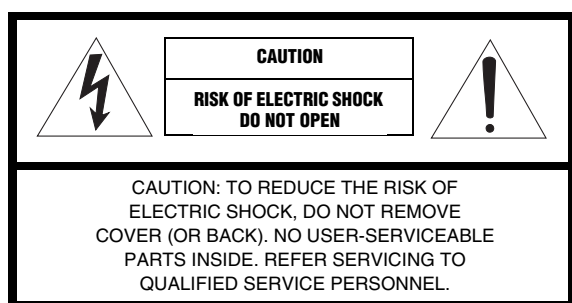


RX-V863

AV Receiver

OWNER'S MANUAL

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS



• Explanation of Graphical Symbols



The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert you to the presence of uninsulated “dangerous voltage” within the product’s enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.



The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert you to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

- 1 Read Instructions – All the safety and operating instructions should be read before the product is operated.
- 2 Retain Instructions – The safety and operating instructions should be retained for future reference.
- 3 Heed Warnings – All warnings on the product and in the operating instructions should be adhered to.
- 4 Follow Instructions – All operating and use instructions should be followed.
- 5 Cleaning – Unplug this product from the wall outlet before cleaning. Do not use liquid cleaners or aerosol cleaners.
- 6 Attachments – Do not use attachments not recommended by the product manufacturer as they may cause hazards.
- 7 Water and Moisture – Do not use this product near water – for example, near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink, or laundry tub; in a wet basement; or near a swimming pool; and the like.
- 8 Accessories – Do not place this product on an unstable cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table. The product may fall, causing serious injury to a child or adult, and serious damage to the product. Use only with a cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table recommended by the manufacturer, or sold with the product. Any mounting of the product should follow the manufacturer’s instructions, and should use a mounting accessory recommended by the manufacturer.
- 9 A product and cart combination should be moved with care. Quick stops, excessive force, and uneven surfaces may cause the product and cart combination to overturn.
- 10 Ventilation – Slots and openings in the cabinet are provided for ventilation and to ensure reliable operation of the product and to protect it from overheating, and these openings must not be blocked or covered. The openings should never be blocked by placing the product on a bed, sofa, rug, or other similar surface. This product should not be placed in a built-in installation such as a bookcase or rack unless proper ventilation is provided or the manufacturer’s instructions have been adhered to.
- 11 Power Sources – This product should be operated only from the type of power source indicated on the marking label. If you are not sure of the type of power supply to your home, consult your product dealer or local power company. For products intended to operate from battery power, or other sources, refer to the operating instructions.
- 12 Grounding or Polarization – This product may be equipped with a polarized alternating current line plug (a plug having one blade wider than the other). This plug will fit into the power outlet only one way. This is a safety feature. If you are unable to insert the plug fully into the outlet, try reversing the plug. If the plug should still fail to fit, contact your electrician to replace your obsolete outlet. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized plug.
- 13 Power-Cord Protection – Power-supply cords should be routed so that they are not likely to be walked on or pinched by items placed upon or against them, paying particular attention to cords at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the product.
- 14 Lightning – For added protection for this product during a lightning storm, or when it is left unattended and unused for long periods of time, unplug it from the wall outlet and disconnect the antenna or cable system. This will prevent damage to the product due to lightning and power-line surges.
- 15 Power Lines – An outside antenna system should not be located in the vicinity of overhead power lines or other electric light or power circuits, or where it can fall into such power lines or circuits. When installing an outside antenna system, extreme care should be taken to keep from touching such power lines or circuits as contact with them might be fatal.
- 16 Overloading – Do not overload wall outlets, extension cords, or integral convenience receptacles as this can result in a risk of fire or electric shock.
- 17 Object and Liquid Entry – Never push objects of any kind into this product through openings as they may touch dangerous voltage points or short-out parts that could result in a fire or electric shock. Never spill liquid of any kind on the product.
- 18 Servicing – Do not attempt to service this product yourself as opening or removing covers may expose you to dangerous voltage or other hazards. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel.
- 19 Damage Requiring Service – Unplug this product from the wall outlet and refer servicing to qualified service personnel under the following conditions:
 - a) When the power-supply cord or plug is damaged,
 - b) If liquid has been spilled, or objects have fallen into the product,
 - c) If the product has been exposed to rain or water,



- This reminder is provided to call the CATV system installer's attention to Article 820-40 of the NEC that provides guidelines for proper grounding and, in particular, specifies that the cable ground shall be connected to the grounding system of the building, as close to the point of cable entry as practical.

- NEC – NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE

Caution: Read this before operating your unit.

- 1 To assure the finest performance, please read this manual carefully. Keep it in a safe place for future reference.
- 2 Install this sound system in a well ventilated, cool, dry, clean place – away from direct sunlight, heat sources, vibration, dust, moisture, and/or cold. Allow ventilation space of at least 30 cm on the top, 20 cm on the left and right, and 20 cm on the back of this unit.
- 3 Locate this unit away from other electrical appliances, motors, or transformers to avoid humming sounds.
- 4 Do not expose this unit to sudden temperature changes from cold to hot, and do not locate this unit in an environment with high humidity (i.e. a room with a humidifier) to prevent condensation inside this unit, which may cause an electrical shock, fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
- 5 Avoid installing this unit where foreign objects may fall onto this unit and/or this unit may be exposed to liquid dripping or splashing. On the top of this unit, do not place:
 - other components, as they may cause damage and/or discoloration on the surface of this unit.
 - burning objects (i.e. candles), as they may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
 - containers with liquid in them, as they may fall and liquid may cause electrical shock to the user and/or damage to this unit.
- 6 Do not cover this unit with a newspaper, tablecloth, curtain, etc. in order not to obstruct heat radiation. If the temperature inside this unit rises, it may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
- 7 Do not plug in this unit to a wall outlet until all connections are complete.
- 8 Do not operate this unit upside-down. It may overheat, possibly causing damage.
- 9 Do not use force on switches, knobs and/or cords.
- 10 When disconnecting the power cable from the wall outlet, grasp the plug; do not pull the cable.
- 11 Do not clean this unit with chemical solvents; this might damage the finish. Use a clean, dry cloth.
- 12 Only voltage specified on this unit must be used. Using this unit with a higher voltage than specified is dangerous and may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury. Yamaha will not be held responsible for any damage resulting from use of this unit with a voltage other than specified.
- 13 To prevent damage by lightning, keep the power cord and outdoor antennas disconnected from a wall outlet or the unit during a lightning storm.
- 14 Do not attempt to modify or fix this unit. Contact qualified Yamaha service personnel when any service is needed. The cabinet should never be opened for any reasons.
- 15 When not planning to use this unit for long periods of time (i.e. vacation), disconnect the AC power plug from the wall outlet.
- 16 Install this unit near the AC outlet and where the AC power plug can be reached easily.
- 17 Be sure to read the “Troubleshooting” section on common operating errors before concluding that this unit is faulty.
- 18 Before moving this unit, press **⏻SYSTEM OFF** to set this unit to the standby mode, and then disconnect the AC power plug from the AC wall outlet.
- 19 **VOLTAGE SELECTOR** (Asia and General models only)
The **VOLTAGE SELECTOR** on the rear panel of this unit must be set for your local main voltage **BEFORE** plugging into the AC wall outlet. Voltages are:
Asia model 220/230–240 V AC, 50/60 Hz
General model 110/120/220/230–240 V AC, 50/60 Hz
- 20 The batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or like.
- 21 Excessive sound pressure from earphones and headphones can cause hearing loss.

WARNING

TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS UNIT TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

As long as this unit is connected to the AC wall outlet, it is not disconnected from the AC power source even if you turn off this unit by **⏻SYSTEM OFF**. In this state, this unit is designed to consume a very small quantity of power.

FOR CANADIAN CUSTOMERS

To prevent electric shock, match wide blade of plug to wide slot and fully insert.
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

POUR LES CONSOMMATEURS CANADIENS

Pour éviter les chocs électriques, introduire la lame la plus large de la fiche dans la borne correspondante de la prise et pousser jusqu'au fond.
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

IMPORTANT

Please record the serial number of this unit in the space below.
MODEL:
Serial No.:
The serial number is located on the rear of the unit.
Retain this Owner's Manual in a safe place for future reference.

Contents

INTRODUCTION

Features	2
Supplied accessories	2
Notice	3
Getting started	4
Quick start guide	5

PREPARATION

Connections	10
Optimizing the speaker setting for your listening room (YPAO)	32
Using AUTO SETUP	32

BASIC OPERATION

Selecting the SCENE templates.....	37
Selecting the desired SCENE template to the SCENE buttons.....	37
Creating your original SCENE templates.....	40
Using the remote control for the SCENE feature.....	41
Playback	42
Basic procedure	42
Selecting the MULTI CH INPUT component.....	43
Selecting the front speaker set.....	43
Selecting audio input jacks (AUDIO SELECT).....	44
Displaying the current status of this unit on a video monitor	44
Using your headphones.....	45
Muting the audio output.....	45
Playing video sources in the background of an audio source.....	45
Displaying the input source information	46
Using the sleep timer	47
Sound field programs.....	48
Selecting sound field programs	48
Sound field program descriptions.....	48
Enjoying unprocessed input sources (Straight decoding mode).....	51
Using audio features.....	52
Adjusting the speaker level.....	52
Enjoying pure hi-fi sound	52
Adjusting the tonal quality.....	52
FM/AM tuning.....	53
Overview.....	53
Basic tuning operations.....	53
Using station preset feature	54
Using HD Radio™ features (U.S.A. model only).....	57
Selecting HD Radio™ audio programs	57
Displaying HD Radio™ information.....	58
XM Satellite Radio tuning	59
Connecting the XM Mini-Tuner Dock	59
Activating XM Satellite Radio	60
Basic XM Satellite Radio operations.....	60
Setting the XM Satellite Radio preset channels	62
Displaying the XM Satellite Radio information	63

SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuning	64
Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner	64
Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription.....	65
Basic SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ operations	65
Setting the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ preset channels	67
Setting the Parental Lock.....	67
Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information	69
Using iPod™	70
Controlling iPod™.....	70
Using Bluetooth™ components.....	72
Pairing the Bluetooth™ adapter and your Bluetooth component	72
Playback of the Bluetooth™ component.....	72
Recording.....	73

ADVANCED OPERATION

Advanced sound configurations.....	74
Changing sound field parameter settings.....	74
Selecting decoders	79
Customizing this unit (MANUAL SETUP).....	82
Using SET MENU	86
1 BASIC MENU	87
2 VOLUME MENU	91
3 SOUND MENU.....	92
4 INPUT MENU.....	95
5 OPTION MENU	98
Remote control features.....	102
Controlling this unit, a TV, or other components	102
Setting remote control codes	104
Resetting all remote control codes.....	105
Using multi-zone configuration.....	106
Connecting Zone 2.....	106
Controlling Zone 2.....	107
Advanced setup.....	109
Using the advanced setup	109

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Troubleshooting.....	113
Resetting the system.....	122
Glossary.....	123
Sound field program information.....	126
Specifications	127
Index	129

APPENDIX

(at the end of this manual)

Front panel.....	i
Remote control	ii
List of remote control codes	iii

“**Ⓐ** SPEAKERS” or “**④** DVD” (example) indicates the name of the parts on the front panel or the remote control. Refer to the attached sheet or the pages at the end of this manual for the information about each position of the parts.

INTRODUCTION

PREPARATION

BASIC OPERATION

ADVANCED OPERATION

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

APPENDIX

English

Features

Built-in 7-channel power amplifier

- ◆ Minimum RMS output power
(20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.06% THD, 8 Ω)
Front: 105 W + 105 W
Center: 105 W
Surround: 105 W + 105 W
Surround back: 105 W + 105 W

SCENE function

- ◆ Preset SCENE templates for various situations
- ◆ SCENE templates for customizing capability
- ◆ Controlling Yamaha SCENE control signal support component (some models only) working with the SCENE function

Sound field programs

- ◆ Proprietary Yamaha technology for the creation of sound fields
- ◆ Compressed Music Enhancer mode
- ◆ Virtual CINEMA DSP
- ◆ SILENT CINEMA

Digital audio decoders

- ◆ Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus decoder
- ◆ DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio decoder
- ◆ Dolby Digital/Dolby Digital EX decoder
- ◆ DTS/DTS-ES Matrix 6.1, Discrete 6.1, DTS 96/24 decoder
- ◆ Dolby Pro Logic/Dolby Pro Logic II/Dolby Pro Logic IIX decoder
- ◆ Neural Surround decoder
- ◆ SRS CS II decoder (U.S.A. model only)

Radio tuners

- ◆ FM/AM tuning capability
- ◆ HD Radio™ digital broadcast reception capability (U.S.A. model only)
- ◆ XM Satellite Radio tuning capability (using XM Mini-Tuner and Home Dock, sold separately)
- ◆ SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuning capability (using SiriusConnect tuner, sold separately)

HDMI™ (High-Definition Multimedia Interface)

- ◆ HDMI interface for standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multi-channel digital audio based on HDMI version 1.3a (HDMI is licensed by HDMI Licensing, LLC.)
 - Automatic audio and video synchronization (lip sync) information capability
 - Deep Color video signal (30/36 bit) transmission capability
 - “x.v.Color” video signal transmission capability
 - High refresh rate and high resolution video signals capability
 - High definition digital audio format signals capability
- ◆ HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System) licensed by Digital Content Protection, LLC.
- ◆ Analog video to HDMI digital video up-conversion (composite video ↔ S-video ↔ component video → HDMI digital video) capability for monitor out
- ◆ Analog video up-scaling from 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) or 480p/576p to 720p, 1080i or 1080p

DOCK terminal

- ◆ DOCK terminal to connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10, sold separately) or Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately)

Other features

- ◆ YPAO (Yamaha Parametric Room Acoustic Optimizer) for automatic speaker setup
- ◆ 192-kHz/24-bit D/A converter
- ◆ OSD (on-screen display) menus that allow you to optimize this unit to suit your individual audiovisual system
- ◆ 5.1 or 7.1-channel additional input jacks for discrete multi-channel input
- ◆ Component video input/output capability includes (3 COMPONENT VIDEO INs and 1 MONITOR OUT)
- ◆ Digital video signal conversion (composite video ↔ S-video ↔ component video) capability for monitor out
- ◆ Pure Direct mode for pure hi-fi sound for all sources
- ◆ Adaptive dynamic range controlling capability
- ◆ Adaptive DSP effect level controlling capability
- ◆ iPod controlling capability
- ◆ Remote control with preset remote control codes capability
- ◆ Zone 2 custom installation facility
- ◆ Bi-amplification connection capability
- ◆ Sleep timer

Supplied accessories

Check that you received all of the following parts.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ☐ Remote control | ☐ AM loop antenna |
| ☐ Batteries (2) (AA, R6, UM-3) | ☐ Indoor FM antenna |
| ☐ Optimizer microphone | |

About this manual

-  indicates a tip for your operation.
- Some operations can be performed by using either the buttons on the front panel or the ones on the remote control. In case the button names differ between the front panel and the remote control, the button name on the remote control is given in parentheses.
- This manual is printed prior to production. Design and specifications are subject to change in part as a result of improvements, etc. In case of differences between the manual and product, the product has priority.
- **“(SPEAKERS)”** or **“(DVD)”** (example) indicates the name of the parts on the front panel or the remote control. Refer to the attached sheet or the pages at the end of this manual for the information about each position of the parts.
- The symbol “ ” with page number(s) indicates the corresponding reference page(s).

We Want You Listening For A Lifetime



Yamaha and the Electronic Industries Association's Consumer Electronics Group want you to get the most out of your equipment by playing it at a safe level. One that lets the sound come through loud and clear without annoying blaring or distortion – and, most importantly, without affecting your sensitive

hearing. Since hearing damage from loud sounds is often undetectable until it is too late, Yamaha and the Electronic Industries Association's Consumer Electronics Group recommend you to avoid prolonged exposure from excessive volume levels.



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent No's: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS is a registered trademark and the DTS logos, Symbol, DTS-HD and DTS-HD Master Audio are trademark of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2007 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

iPod™

“iPod” is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bluetooth™

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG and is used by Yamaha in accordance with a license agreement.



“HDMI”, the “HDMI” logo and “High-Definition Multimedia Interface” are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

x.v.Color™

“x.v.Color” is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

SILENT™ CINEMA

“SILENT CINEMA” is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.



The XM name and related logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.



Neural Surround™ name and related logos are trademarks owned by Neural Audio Corporation.



©2006 SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc. “SIRIUS”, “SiriusConnect”, the SIRIUS dog logo, channel names and logos are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.

HD Radio

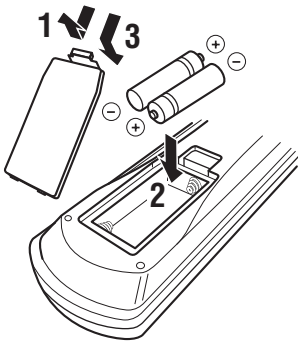
HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.



Circle Surround II, Dialog Clarity, TruBass, SRS and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc. Circle Surround II, Dialog Clarity and TruBass technologies are incorporated under license from SRS Labs, Inc.

Getting started

■ Installing batteries in the remote control



1 Take off the battery compartment cover.

2 Insert the two supplied batteries (AA, R6, UM-3) according to the polarity markings (+ and -) on the inside of the battery compartment.

3 Snap the battery compartment cover back into place.

Notes

- Change all of the batteries if you notice the following conditions:
 - the operation range of the remote control decreases.
 - the **TRANSMIT** indicator does not flash or its light becomes dim.
- Do not use an old battery together with a new one.
- Do not use different types of batteries (such as alkaline and manganese batteries) together. Read the packaging carefully as these different types of batteries may have the same shape and color.
- If the batteries have leaked, dispose of them immediately. Avoid touching the leaked material or letting it come into contact with clothing, etc. Clean the battery compartment thoroughly before installing new batteries.
- Do not throw away batteries with general house waste; dispose of them correctly in accordance with your local regulations.
- If the remote control is without batteries for more than 2 minutes, or if exhausted batteries remain in the remote control, the contents of the memory may be cleared. When the memory is cleared, insert new batteries, set up the remote control code and program any acquired functions that may have been cleared.

■ VOLTAGE SELECTOR (Asia and General models only)

Caution

The VOLTAGE SELECTOR on the rear panel of this unit must be set for your local voltage BEFORE plugging the power cable into the AC wall outlet. Improper setting of the VOLTAGE SELECTOR may cause damage to this unit and create a potential fire hazard.

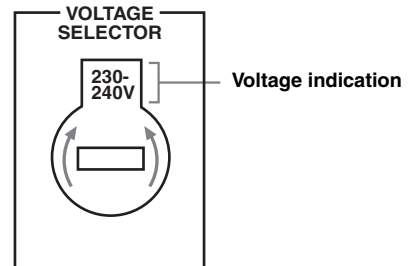
Rotate the VOLTAGE SELECTOR clockwise or counterclockwise to the correct position using a straight slot screwdriver.

Voltages are as follows:

Asia model 220/230–240 V AC, 50/60 Hz

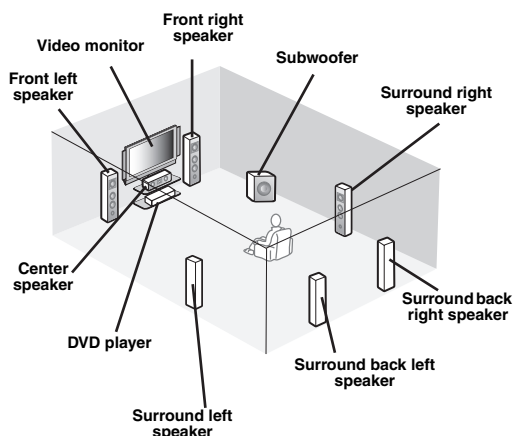
General model

..... 110/120/220/230–240 V AC, 50/60 Hz



Quick start guide

The following steps describe the easiest way to enjoy DVD movie playback in your home theater. See pages 11 to 15 for details of the speaker placement.



Step 1: Set up your speakers

P. 6

Step 2: Connect your DVD player and other components

P. 7

Step 3: Press SCENE 1 button

P. 8

Enjoy DVD playback!

Preparation: Check the items

Prepare the following items.

- ☐ **Speakers**
 - ☐ **Front speakers** x 2
 - ☐ **Center speaker** x 1
 - ☐ **Surround speakers** x 4
- Select magnetically shielded speakers. The minimum required speakers are two front speakers. The priority of the requirement of other speakers is as follows:
 1. Two surround speakers
 2. Center speaker
 3. One (or two) surround back speaker(s)
- ☐ **Active subwoofer** x 1

Select an active subwoofer equipped with an RCA input jack.
- ☐ **Speaker cables** x 7
- ☐ **Subwoofer cable** x 1

Select a monaural RCA cable.
- ☐ **DVD player** x 1

Select DVD player equipped with coaxial digital audio output jack and composite video output jack.
- ☐ **Video monitor** x 1

Select a TV monitor, video monitor or projector equipped with a composite video input jack.
- ☐ **Video cable** x 2

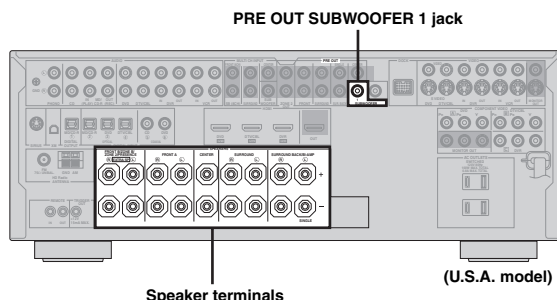
Select an RCA composite video cable.
- ☐ **Digital coaxial audio cable** x 1



You can also connect two subwoofers to this unit. In this case, prepare two active subwoofers and subwoofer cables.

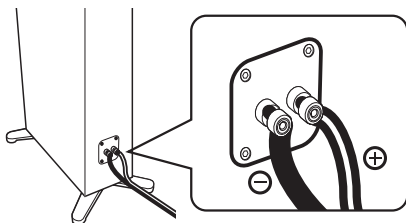
Step 1: Set up your speakers

Place your speakers in the room and connect them to this unit.



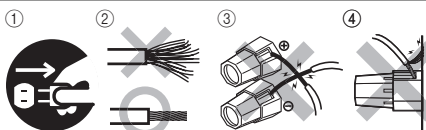
1 Place your speakers and subwoofer in the room.

2 Connect speaker cables to each speaker.



Be sure to connect the “+” (red) and “-” (black) properly. Cables are colored or shaped differently, perhaps with a stripe, groove or ridge. Connect the striped (grooved, etc.) cable to the “+” (red) terminals of this unit and your speaker. Connect the plain cable to the “-” (black) terminals.

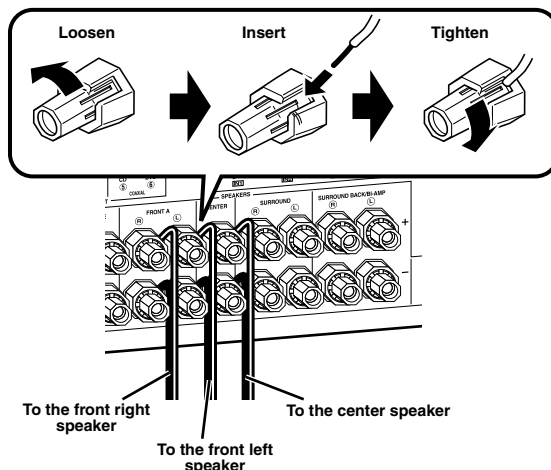
3 Connect each speaker cable to the corresponding speaker terminal of this unit.



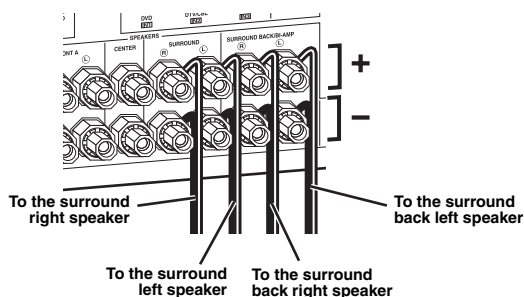
- ① Make sure that this unit and the subwoofer are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.
- ② Twist the exposed wires of the speaker cables together to prevent short circuits.
- ③ Do not let the bare speaker wires touch each other.
- ④ Do not let the bare speaker wires touch any metal part of this unit.

Be sure to connect the left channel (L), right channel (R), “+” (red) and “-” (black) properly.

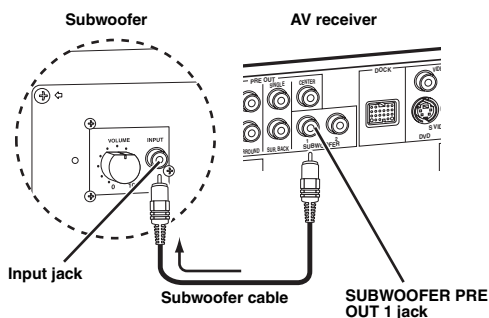
Front speakers and center speaker



Surround and surround back speakers

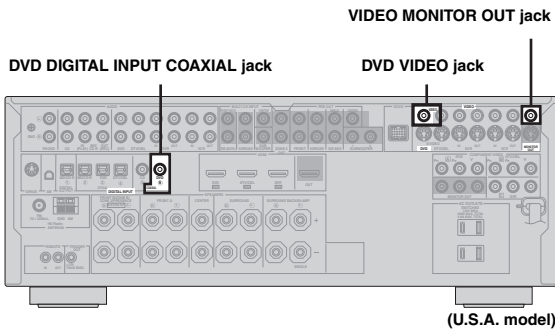


4 Connect the subwoofer cable to the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 1 jack of this unit and the input jack of the subwoofer.



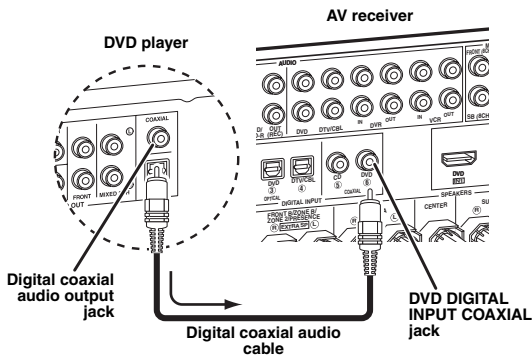
You can also connect another subwoofer to the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 2 jack.

Step 2: Connect your DVD player and other components

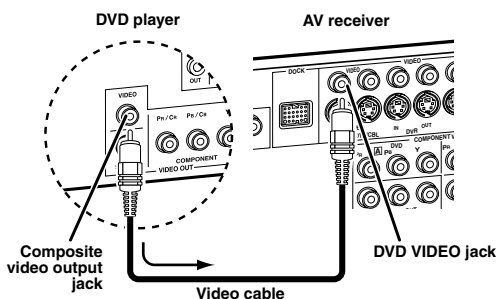


Make sure that this unit and the DVD player are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.

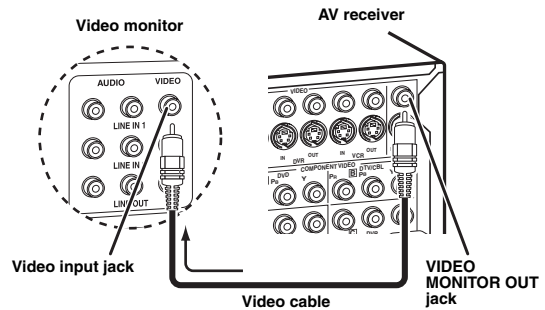
- 1 Connect the digital coaxial audio cable to the digital coaxial audio output jack of your DVD player and the DVD DIGITAL INPUT COAXIAL jack of this unit.



- 2 Connect the video cable to the composite video output jack of your DVD player and DVD VIDEO jack of this unit.



- 3 Connect the video cable to the VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack of this unit and the video input jack of your video monitor.



- 4 Connect the power plug of this unit and other components into the AC wall outlet.



This unit is equipped with AC OUTLET(S) for the power supply of the other components (except Korea model). See page 28 for details.

■ For further connections

- Using the other kind of speaker combinations P. 11
- Connecting a video monitor via various ways of the connection P. 20
- Connecting a DVD player via various ways of the connection P. 21
- Connecting a DVD recorder or a digital video recorder P. 22
- Connecting a set-top box P. 22
- Connecting a CD player, an MD recorder or a turntable P. 23
- Connecting an external amplifier P. 24
- Connecting a DVD player via analog multi-channel audio connection P. 25
- Connecting a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth adapter P. 25
- Using the REMOTE IN/OUT jacks P. 26
- Using the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel P. 26
- Connecting a FM/AM antenna P. 27
- Connecting the XM Mini-Tuner Dock P. 59
- Connecting the SiriusConnect tuner P. 64

Step 3: Press SCENE 1 button

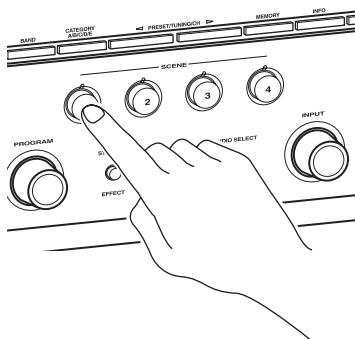
Check the type of the connected speakers.

If the speakers are 6 ohm speakers, set “SP IMP.” to “6Ω MIN” before using this unit (see page 28). 4 ohm speakers can be also used as the front speakers (see page 109).

- 1 Turn on the video monitor and then set the input source selector of the video monitor to this unit.

- 2 Press **SCENE1** button.

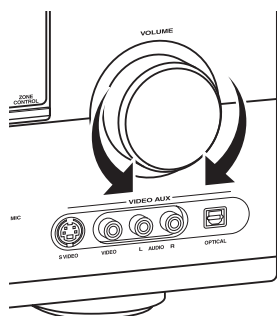
This unit is turned on. “DVD Viewing” appears in the front panel display, and this unit automatically optimize own status for the DVD playback.



The indicator on the selected SCENE button lights up while this unit is in the SCENE mode.

- 3 Start playback of the desired DVD on your player.

- 4 Rotate **VOLUME** to adjust the volume.



Note

When you change the input source or sound field program, the SCENE mode is deactivated.

About SCENE function

Just by pressing one SCENE button, you can turn on this unit and recall your favorite input source and sound field program according to the SCENE template that has been assigned to the SCENE button. The SCENE templates are built combinations of input sources and sound field programs.



If you connect a Yamaha product that has capability of the SCENE control signals, this unit can automatically activate the component and start playback. Refer to the instruction manual of the DVD player for further information.

The default assigned SCENE templates

Default SCENE button	The name of the SCENE template and its description
SCENE 1	DVD Viewing – input source: DVD – sound field program: Straight For when you want to listen to a music disc from the connected DVD player as the background music for this room.
SCENE 2	Disc Listening – input source: DVD – sound field program: 7ch Stereo For when you want to listen to a music disc from the connected DVD player as the background music for this room.
SCENE 3	TV Viewing *1 – input source: DTV/CBL – sound field program: Straight For when you want to watch a TV program.
SCENE 4	Radio Listening *2, *3, *4 – input source: TUNER – sound field program: 7ch Enhancer For when you want to listen to a music program from the FM radio station.

Notes

*1 You must connect a cable TV or a satellite tuner to this unit in advance. See page 22 for details.

*2 You need to connect the supplied FM and AM antennas to this unit in advance. See page 27 for details.

*3 You must tune into the desired radio station in advance. See pages 53 to 56 for tuning information.

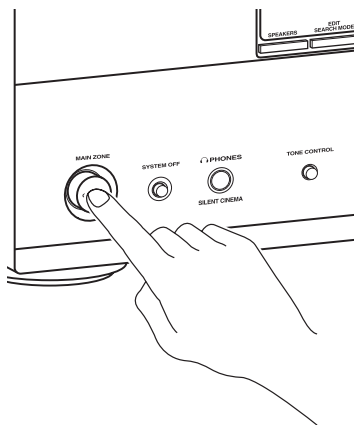
*4 To achieve the best possible reception, orient the connected AM loop antenna, or adjust the position of the end of the indoor FM antenna.



You can change the assigned SCENE template for the SCENE buttons. See page 37 for details.

■ After using this unit...

Press **ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF** to set this unit to the standby mode.



This unit is set to the standby mode and consumes a small amount of power in order to receive infrared signals from the remote control. To turn on this unit from the standby mode, press the desired **ⓈSCENE** buttons (or **ⓂSCENE**) or **ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF** (or **ⓁPOWER**). See page 29 for details.

What do you want to do with this unit?

■ Customizing the SCENE templates

- Using various SCENE templates P. 37
- Creating your original SCENE templates P. 40

■ Using various input sources

- Basic controls of this unit P. 42
- Enjoying FM/AM radio programs P. 53
- Enjoying XM Satellite Radio programs P. 59
- Enjoying SIRIUS Satellite Radio programs P. 64
- Using your iPod with this unit P. 70
- Using the Bluetooth components P. 72

■ Using various sound features

- Using various sound field programs P. 48
- Using the pure direct mode for high fidelity sound P. 52
- Customizing the sound field programs P. 74

■ Adjusting the parameters of this unit

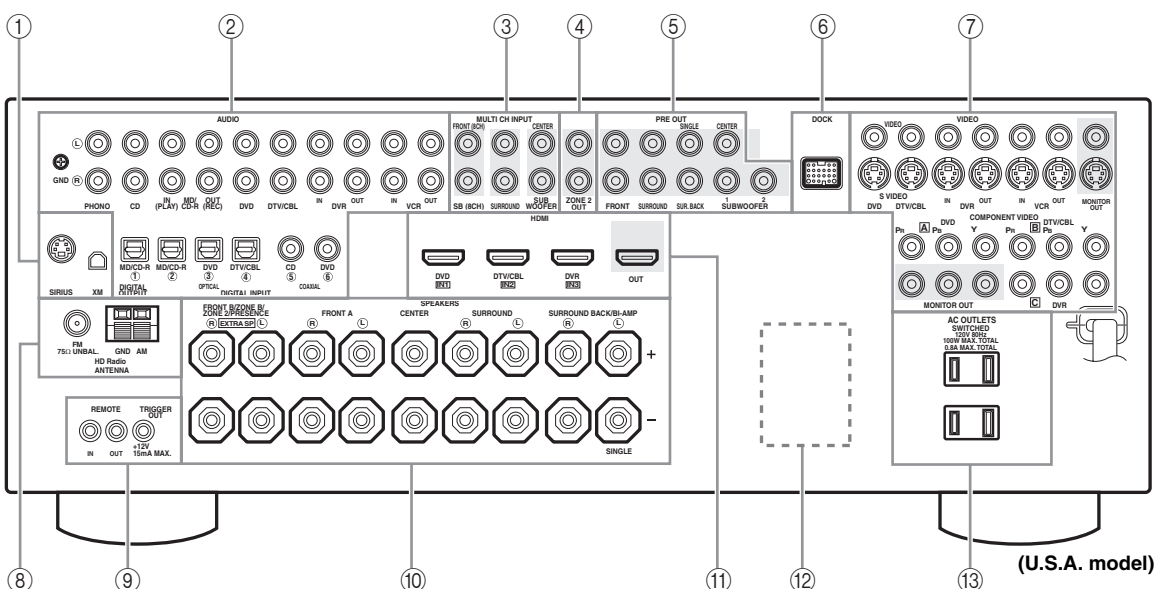
- Automatically optimizing the speaker parameters for your listening room (AUTO SETUP) P. 32
- Manually adjusting various parameters of this unit P. 82
- Setting the remote control P. 102
- Adjusting the advanced parameters P. 109

■ Additional feature

- Automatically turning off this unit P. 47

Connections

Rear panel



	Name	Page
①	XM jack (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	59
	SIRIUS jack (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	64
②	AUDIO jacks	21
	DIGITAL INPUT/OUTPUT jacks	17-23
③	MULTI CH INPUT jacks	25
④	ZONE2 OUT jacks	106
⑤	PRE OUT jacks	24
⑥	DOCK terminal	25
⑦	Video component jacks (VIDEO and S VIDEO)	17-22
	COMPONENT VIDEO jacks	17-22
⑧	ANTENNA terminals	27
⑨	REMOTE IN/OUT jacks	26
⑩	Speaker terminals	11-16
⑪	HDMI jacks	18
⑫	VOLTAGE SELECTOR (Asia and General models only)	4
⑬	AC OUTLET(S)	28

⑨ **TRIGGER OUT jack**

This is control expansion jack for custom installation.

Placing speakers

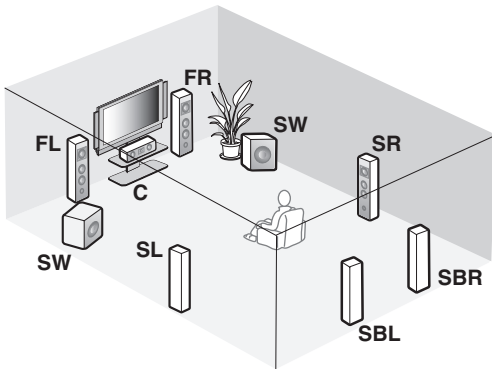
The speaker layout below shows the speaker setting we recommend. You can use it to enjoy the CINEMA DSP and multi-channel audio sources.

7.1-channel speaker layout

7.1-channel speaker layout is highly recommended for playback the sound of high definition audio formats (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD Master Audio, etc.) as well as the conventional audio sources with sound field programs. See page 14 for connection information.



We recommend that you also add the presence speakers for the effect sounds of the CINEMA DSP sound field program. See page 13 for details.



Speaker indications

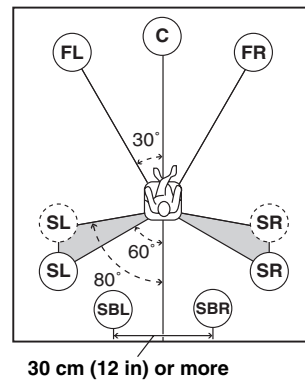
FL/FR: Front left/right

C: Center

SL/SR: Surround left/right

SBL/SBR: Surround back left/right

SW: Subwoofer



Front left and right speakers

The front speakers are used for the main source sound plus effect sounds. Place these speakers at an equal distance from the ideal listening position. The distance of each speaker from each side of the video monitor should be the same.

Center speaker

The center speaker is for the center channel sounds (dialog, vocals, etc.). If for some reason it is not practical to use a center speaker, you can do without it. Best results, however, are obtained with the full system.

Surround left and right speakers

The surround speakers are used for effect and surround sounds.

Surround back left and right speakers

The surround back speakers supplement the surround speakers and provide more realistic front-to-back transitions.

Subwoofer(s)

The use of a subwoofer with a built-in amplifier, such as the Yamaha Active Servo Processing Subwoofer System, is effective not only for reinforcing bass frequencies from any or all channels, but also for reproducing the high fidelity sound of the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel included in Dolby Digital and DTS sources. You can connect one or two subwoofer(s) to this unit. When you use two subwoofers, you can enjoy deeper bass sound. The position of the subwoofer is not so critical, because low bass sounds are not highly directional. But it is better to place the subwoofer near the front speakers. Turn it slightly toward the center of the room to reduce wall reflections.



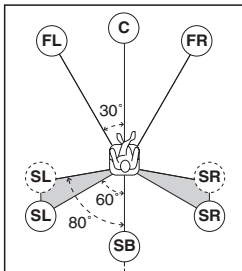
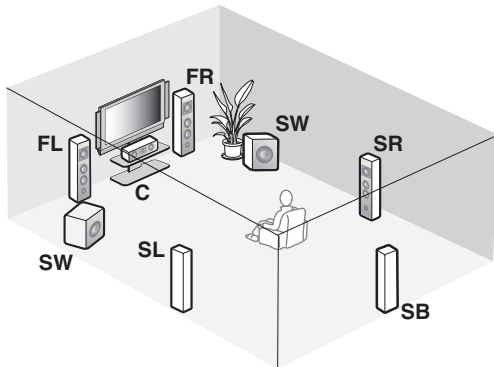
When you use two subwoofers, select the same type of the subwoofer as another and set these subwoofers as same sound characteristics. Place each subwoofer at the same distance from the listening position. The signal output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 2 jack is the same as the one output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 1 jack.

■ 6.1-channel speaker layout

See page 14 for connection information.



We recommend that you also add the presence speakers for the effect sounds of the CINEMA DSP sound field program. See page 13 for details.



Speaker indications

FL/FR: Front left/right

C: Center

SL/SR: Surround left/right

SB: Surround back

SW: Subwoofer

Front left and right speakers

Center speaker

Surround left and right speakers

Subwoofer(s)

The functions and settings of each speaker are the same as those for the 7.1-channel speaker layout (see page 11).

Surround back speaker

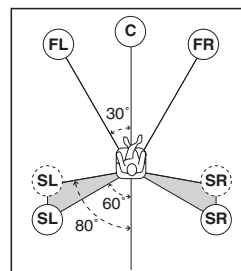
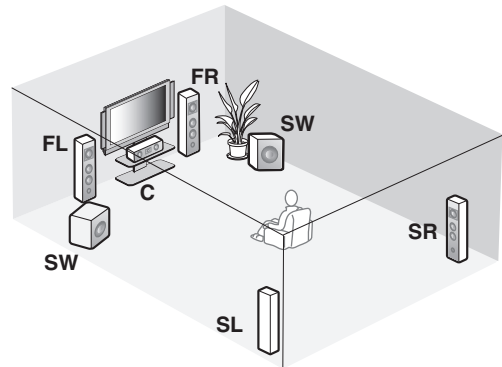
Connect a single surround speakers to the SURROUND BACK SINGLE speaker terminal and place the single surround back speaker behind the listening position. The surround back left and right channel signals are mixed down and output at the single surround back speaker when you set "SUR.B L/R SP" to "SMLx1" or "LRGx1" (see page 88).

■ 5.1-channel speaker layout

See page 14 for connection information.



We recommend that you also add the presence speakers for the effect sounds of the CINEMA DSP sound field program. See page 13 for details.



Speaker indications

FL/FR: Front left/right

C: Center

SL/SR: Surround left/right

SW: Subwoofer

Front left and right speakers

Center speaker

Subwoofer(s)

The functions and settings of each speaker are the same as those for the 7.1-channel speaker layout (see page 11).

Surround left and right speakers

Connect the surround speakers to the SURROUND speaker terminals even if you place the surround speakers behind the listening position. For the smooth and unbroken sound field behind the listening position, place the surround left and right speakers farther back compared with the placement in the 7.1-channel speaker layout. The surround back channel signals are directed to the surround left and right speakers when "SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE" (see page 88).

For other speaker combinations

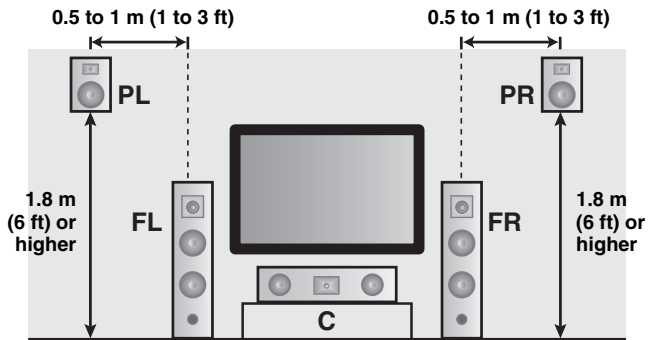
You can enjoy multi-channel sources with sound field programs by using a speaker combination other than the 7.1/6.1/5.1-channel speaker combinations.

Use the automatic setup feature (see page 32) or set the "SPEAKER SET" parameters in "MANUAL SETUP" (see page 87) to output the surround sounds at the connected speakers.

■ Using presence speakers

The presence speakers supplement the sound from the front and surround back speakers with extra ambient effects produced by the sound field programs (see page 48). You can adjust the vertical position of dialogues with using the presence speakers (see page 75).

To use the presence speakers, connect the speakers to the EXTRA SP terminal (see page 14) and set “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” to “PRESENCE” (see pages 33 and 87).



Speaker indications

FL: Front left
FR: Front right
C: Center
PL: Front presence left
PR: Front presence right

Connecting speakers

Be sure to connect the left channel (L), right channel (R), “+” (red) and “-” (black) properly. If the connections are faulty, this unit cannot reproduce the input sources accurately.

Caution

- Before connecting the speakers, make sure that the AC power plug is disconnected from the AC wall outlet.
- Do not let the bare speaker wires touch each other or let them touch any metal part of this unit. This could damage this unit and/or the speakers. If the speaker wires are short-circuited, “CHECK SP WIRES” appears in the front panel display when you turn on this unit.
- Use the magnetically shielded speakers. If this type of speaker still creates interference with the monitor, place the speakers away from the monitor.
- If you are to use 6 ohm speakers, be sure to set “SP IMP.” to “6Ω MIN” before using this unit (see page 28). 4 ohm speakers can be also used as the front speakers. For details about the speaker impedance setting, see page 109.

Note

A speaker cord is actually a pair of insulated cables running side by side. Cables are colored or shaped differently, perhaps with a stripe, groove or ridge. Connect the striped (grooved, etc.) cable to the “+” (red) terminals of this unit and your speaker. Connect the plain cable to the “-” (black) terminals.

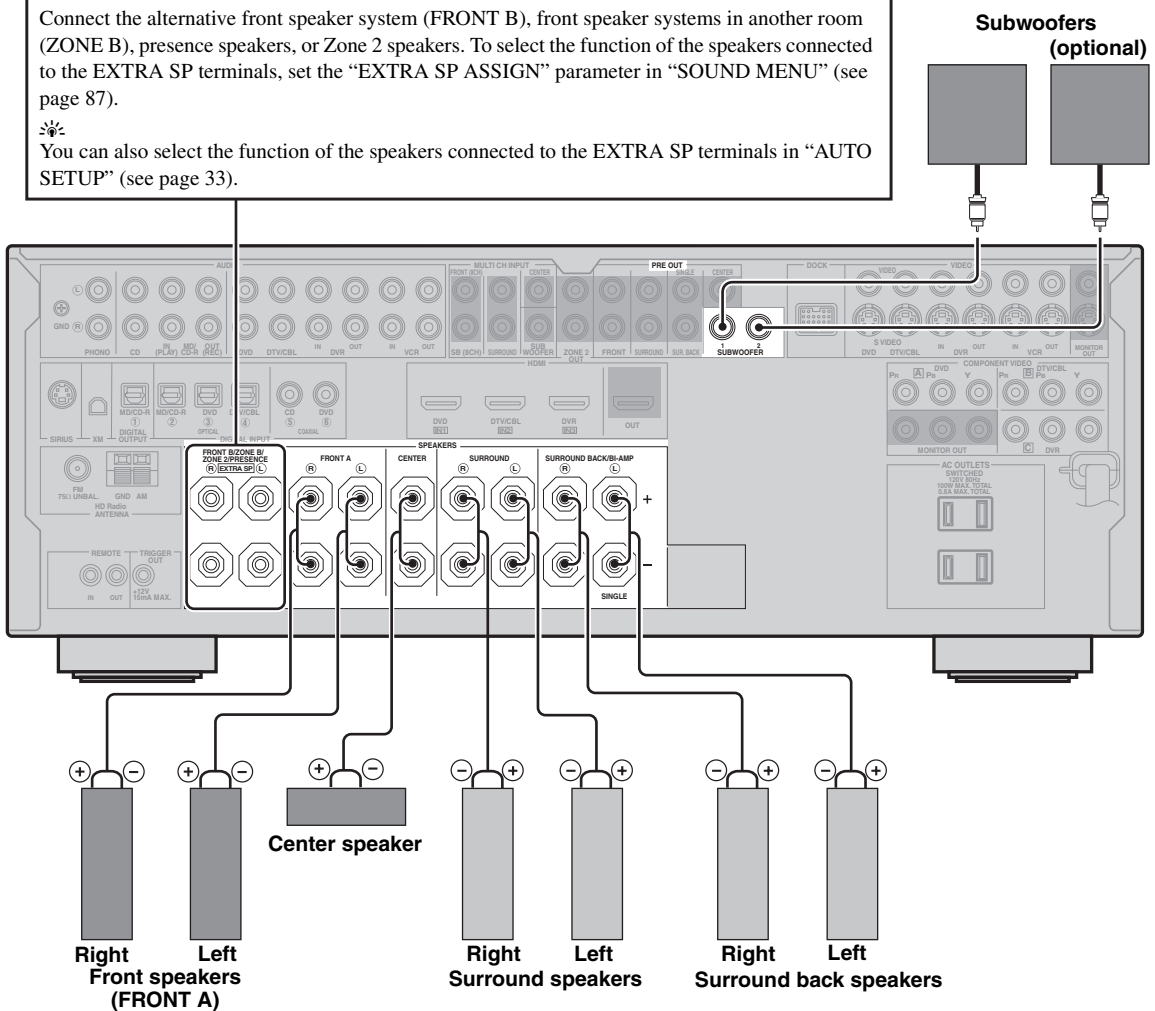
■ For the 7.1-channel speaker setting

EXTRA SP terminals

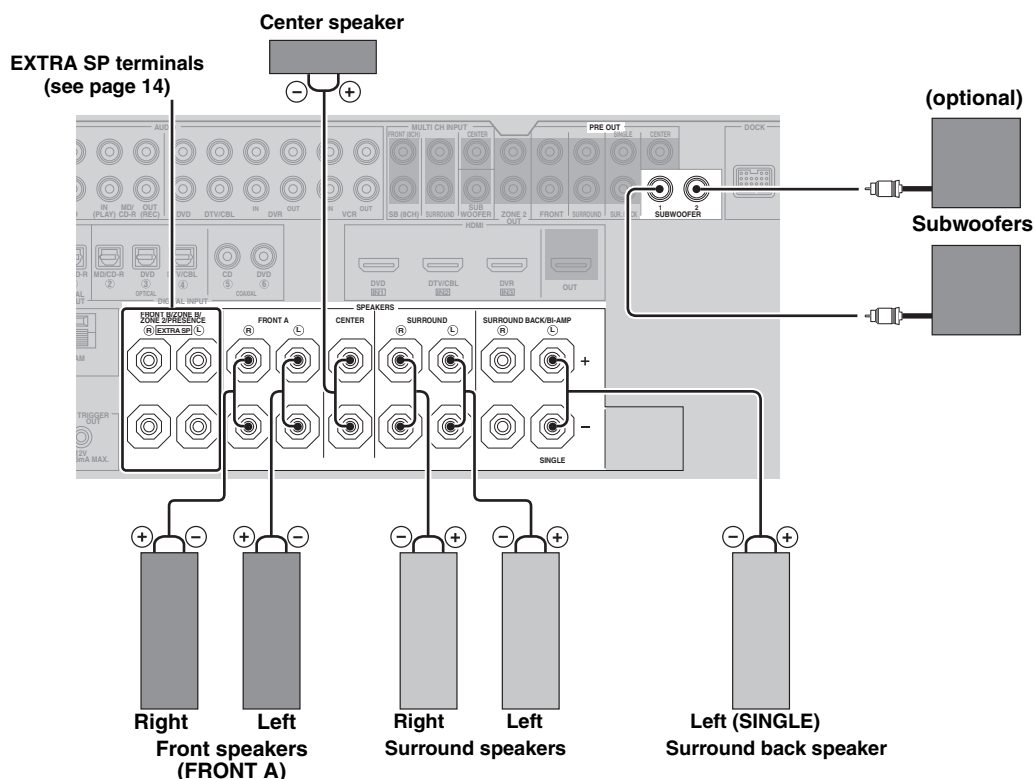
Connect the alternative front speaker system (FRONT B), front speaker systems in another room (ZONE B), presence speakers, or Zone 2 speakers. To select the function of the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP terminals, set the “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” parameter in “SOUND MENU” (see page 87).



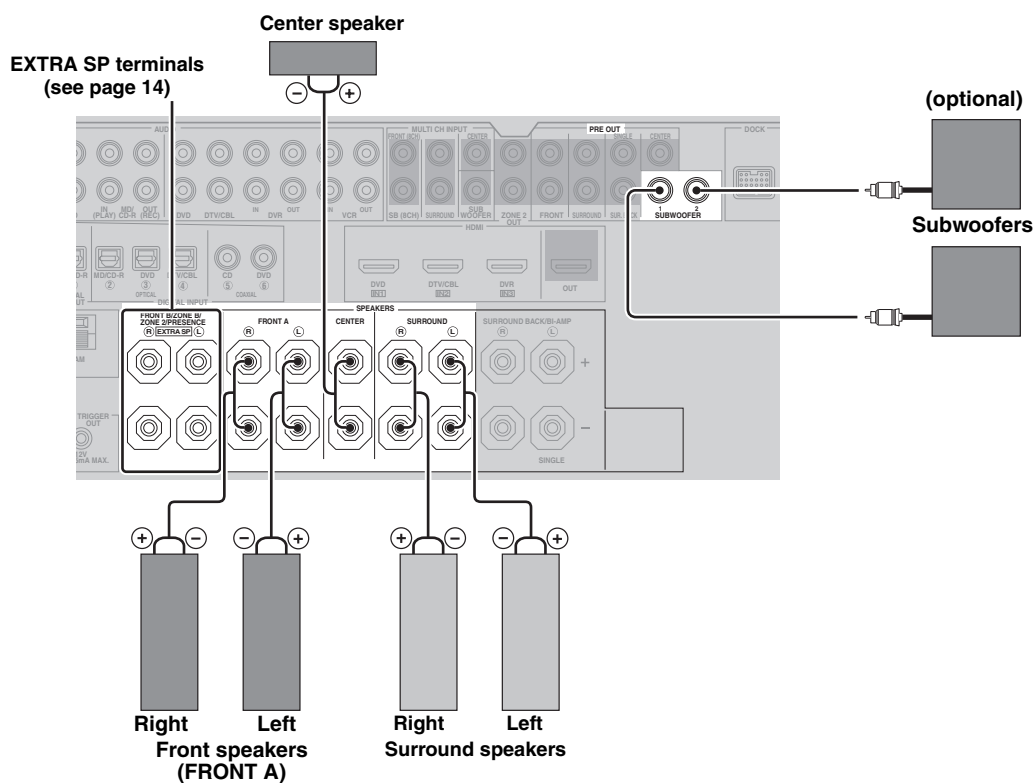
You can also select the function of the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP terminals in “AUTO SETUP” (see page 33).



■ For the 6.1-channel speaker setting

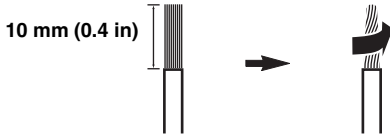


■ For the 5.1-channel speaker setting

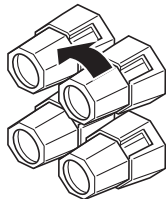


■ Connecting the speaker cable

- 1 Remove approximately 10 mm (0.4 in) of insulation from the end of each speaker cable and then twist the exposed wires of the cable together to prevent short circuits.

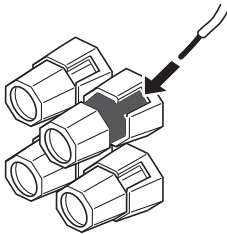


- 2 Loosen the knob.

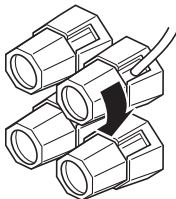


Red: positive (+)
Black: negative (-)

- 3 Insert one bare wire into the hole on the side of each terminal.

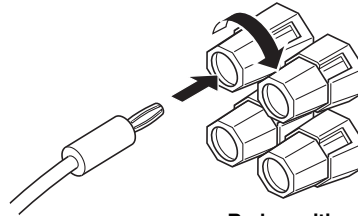


- 4 Tighten the knob to secure the wire.



■ Connecting the banana plug (except Europe, Russia, Asia and Korea models)

Tighten the knob and then insert the banana plug connector into the end of the corresponding terminal.



Red: positive (+)
Black: negative (-)

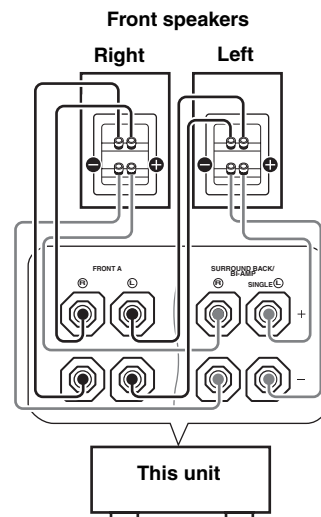
■ Using bi-amplification connections

Caution

Remove the shorting bars or bridges of your speakers to separate the LPF (low pass filter) and HPF (high pass filter) crossovers.

This unit allows you to make bi-amplification connections to one speaker system. Check if your speakers support bi-amplification.

To make the bi-amplification connections, use the FRONT and SURROUND BACK/BI-AMP terminals as shown below. To activate the bi-amplification connections, set "BI-AMP" to "ON" in "ADVANCED SETUP" (see page 112).



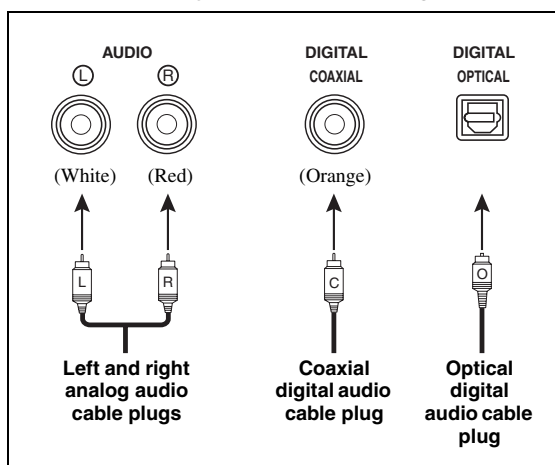
Note

When you make the conventional connection, make sure that the shorting bars are put into the terminals appropriately. Refer to the instruction manuals of the speakers for details.

Information on jacks and cable plugs

Connect one of the type of the audio jack(s) and/or video jack(s) that your input components are equipped with.

Audio jacks and cable plugs



■ Audio jacks

This unit has three types of audio jacks. Connection depends on the availability of audio jacks on your other components.

AUDIO jacks

For conventional analog audio signals transmitted via left and right analog audio cables. Connect red plugs to the right jacks and white plugs to the left jacks.

DIGITAL COAXIAL jacks

For digital audio signals transmitted via coaxial digital audio cables.

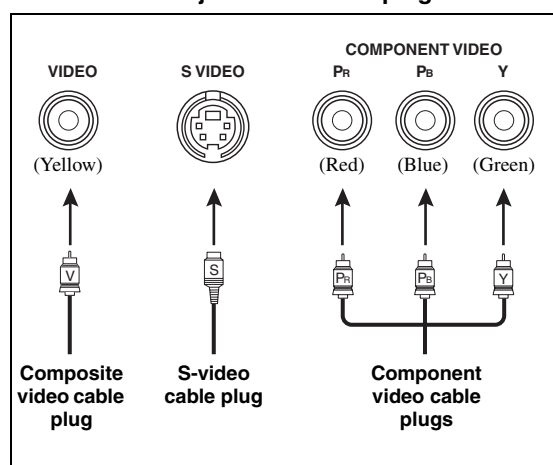
DIGITAL OPTICAL jacks

For digital audio signals transmitted via optical digital audio cables.

Note

You can use the digital jacks to input PCM, Dolby Digital and DTS bitstreams. When you connect components to both the COAXIAL and OPTICAL jacks, priority is given to the signals input at the COAXIAL jack. Optical input jacks are compatible with digital signals with up to 96 kHz of sampling frequency.

Video jacks and cable plugs



■ Video jacks

This unit has three types of video jacks. Connection depends on the availability of input jacks on your video monitor.

VIDEO jacks

For conventional composite video signals transmitted via composite video cables.

S VIDEO jacks

For S-video signals, separated into the luminance (Y) and chrominance (C) video signals transmitted on separate wires of S-video cables.

COMPONENT VIDEO jacks

For component video signals, separated into the luminance (Y) and chrominance (Pb, Pr) video signals transmitted on separate wires of component video cables.



This unit is equipped with the video conversion function. See pages 19 and 98 for details.

Information on HDMI™

■ HDMI signal compatibility

Audio signals

Audio signal types	Audio signal formats	Compatible media
2ch Linear PCM	2ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	CD, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, etc.
Multi-ch Linear PCM	8ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	DVD-Audio, Blu-ray Disc, HD DVD, etc.
DSD	2/5.1ch, 2.8224 MHz, 1 bit	SA-CD, etc.
Bitstream	Dolby Digital, DTS	DVD-Video, etc.
Bitstream (High definition audio)	Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS Express	Blu-ray Disc, HD DVD, etc.



- If the input source component can decode the bitstream audio signals of audio commentaries, you can play back the audio sources with the audio commentaries mixed down by using the following connections:
 - multi-channel analog audio input (see page 25)
 - DIGITAL INPUT OPTICAL (or COAXIAL)
- Refer to the supplied instruction manuals of the input source component, and set the component appropriately.

Notes

- When CPPM copy-protected DVD-Audio is played back, video and audio signals may not be output depending on the type of the DVD player.
- This unit is not compatible with HDCP-incompatible HDMI or DVI components.
- To decode audio bitstream signals on this unit, set the input source component appropriately so that the component outputs the bitstream audio signals directly (does not decode the bitstream signals on the component). Refer to the supplied instruction manuals for details.
- This unit is not compatible with the audio commentary features (for example, the special audio contents downloaded via Internet) of Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD. This unit does not play back the audio commentaries of the Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD contents.

Video signals

This unit is compatible with the video signals of the following resolutions:

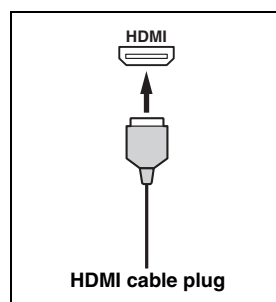
Video signal format

- 480i/60 Hz
- 576i/50 Hz
- 480p/60 Hz
- 576p/50 Hz
- 720p/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080i/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080p/60 Hz, 50 Hz, 24 Hz

Default input assignment of HDMI input jacks

HDMI input jack	Assigned input source
IN1	DVD
IN2	DTV/CBL
IN3	DVR

■ HDMI jack and cable plug



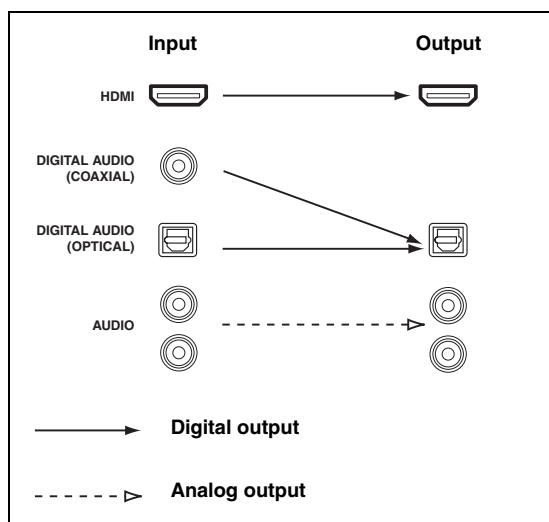
- We recommend that you use an HDMI cable shorter than 5 meters (16 feet) with the HDMI logo printed on it.
- Use a conversion cable (HDMI jack ↔ DVI-D jack) to connect this unit to other DVI components.

Notes

- Do not disconnect or connect the cable or turn off the power of the HDMI components connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit while data is being transferred. Doing so may disrupt playback or cause noise.
- If you turn off the power of the video monitor connected to the HDMI OUT jack via a DVI connection, this unit may fail to establish the connection to the component.
- The analog video signals input at the composite video, S-video and component video jacks can be digitally up-converted to be output at the HDMI OUT jack. Set "VIDEO CONV." to "ON" in "MANUAL SETUP" (see page 98) to activate this feature.

Audio and video signal flow

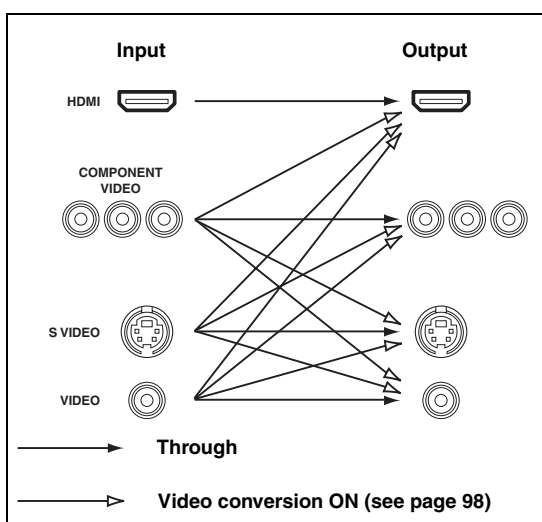
Audio signal flow



Notes

- 2-channel as well as multi-channel PCM, Dolby Digital and DTS signals input at one of the HDMI IN jacks can be output at the HDMI OUT jack only when “S.AUDIO” is set to “OTHER” (see page 101).
- Audio signals input at the HDMI IN jacks are not output at the AUDIO output and DIGITAL OUTPUT jacks.

Video signal flow



Notes

- When the video signals are input at the HDMI, COMPONENT VIDEO, S VIDEO, and VIDEO jacks, the priority order of the input signals is as follows:
 1. HDMI
 2. COMPONENT VIDEO
 3. S VIDEO
 4. VIDEO
- Digital video signals input at one of the HDMI IN jacks cannot be output from analog video output jacks.
- The analog component video signals with 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) of resolution are converted to the S-video or composite video signals and output at the S VIDEO MONITOR OUT and VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.
- The analog component video signals with 1080p of resolution are only output at the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.
- Use the “HDMI RES.” parameter in “VIDEO SET” to deinterlace and convert the resolution of the analog video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack (see page 99).

Connecting a TV monitor or projector

Connect your TV (or projector) to the HDMI OUT jack, the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks, the S VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack or the VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack of this unit.



Make sure that this unit and other components are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.

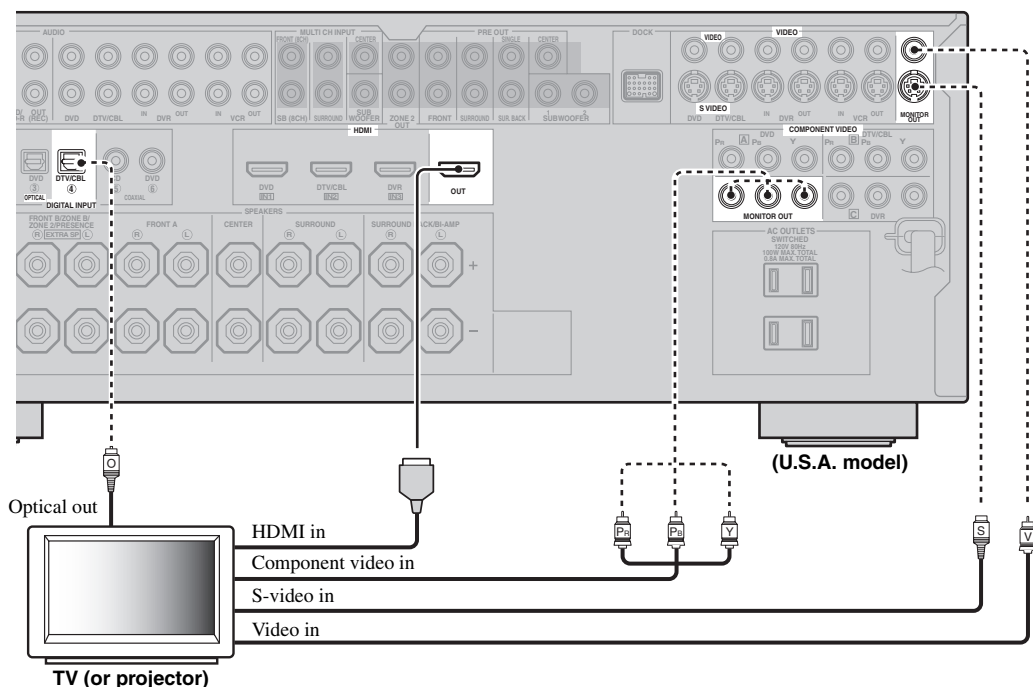


- You can choose to play back HDMI audio signals on this unit or on another HDMI component connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit. Use the “S.AUDIO” parameter in “OPTION MENU” to select the component to play back HDMI audio signals (see page 101).

- When you use the internal tuner of the TV as the input source, connect the digital or analog audio output jacks of the TV and digital or analog audio input jacks of this unit. Refer to “Connecting a set-top box” on page 22 for connecting information.

Notes

- If a video monitor is connected to this unit via a DVI connection, you may not take full advantage of the HDMI features.
- Some video monitors connected to this unit via a DVI connection fail to recognize the HDMI audio/video signals being input if they are in the standby mode. In this case, the HDMI indicator flashes irregularly.
- If the connected video monitor is compatible with the automatic audio and video synchronization feature (automatic lip sync feature), this unit adjusts the audio and video timing automatically (see page 94). Connect the video monitor to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit to use the feature.



— indicates recommended connections

- - - indicates alternative connections
(One for the video connection, and one for the audio connection)

Connecting other components



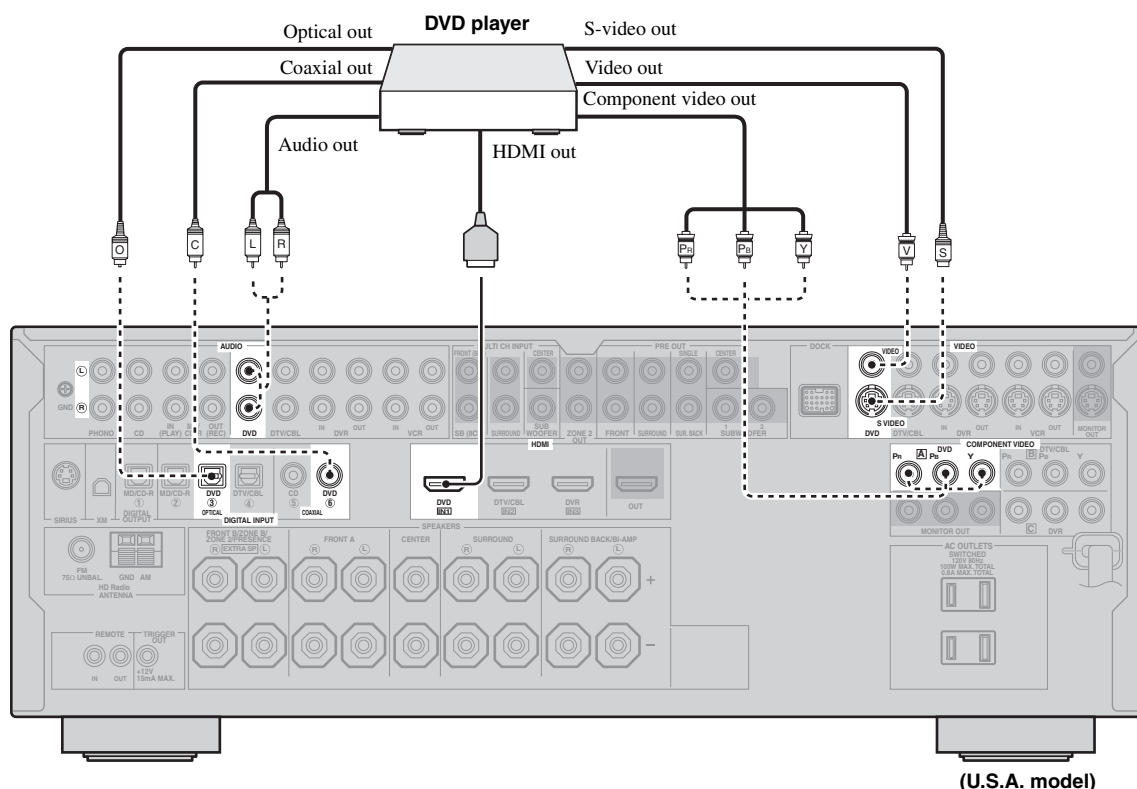
Make sure that this unit and other components are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.

Notes

- When “VIDEO CONV.” is set to “OFF” (see page 98), be sure to make the same type of video connections as those made for your TV (see page 20). For example, if you connected your TV to the VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack of this unit, connect your other components to the VIDEO jacks.

- When “VIDEO CONV.” is set to “ON” (see page 98), the converted video signals are output only at the MONITOR OUT jacks. To record a source, make the same type of video connections between each component.
- To make a digital connection to a component other than the default component assigned to each DIGITAL INPUT or DIGITAL OUTPUT jack, select the corresponding setting for “OPTICAL OUT”, “OPTICAL IN”, or “COAXIAL IN” in “I/O ASSIGNMENT” (see page 95).
- If you connect your DVD player to both the DIGITAL INPUT (OPTICAL) and the DIGITAL INPUT (COAXIAL) jacks, priority is given to the signals input at the DIGITAL INPUT (COAXIAL) jack.

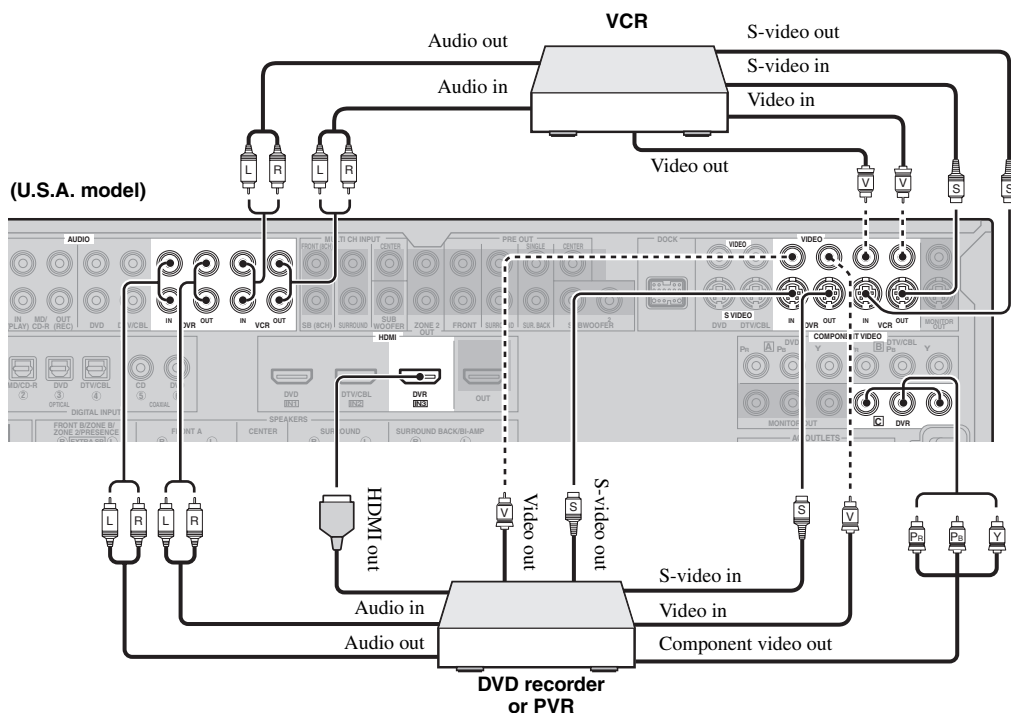
■ Connecting a DVD player



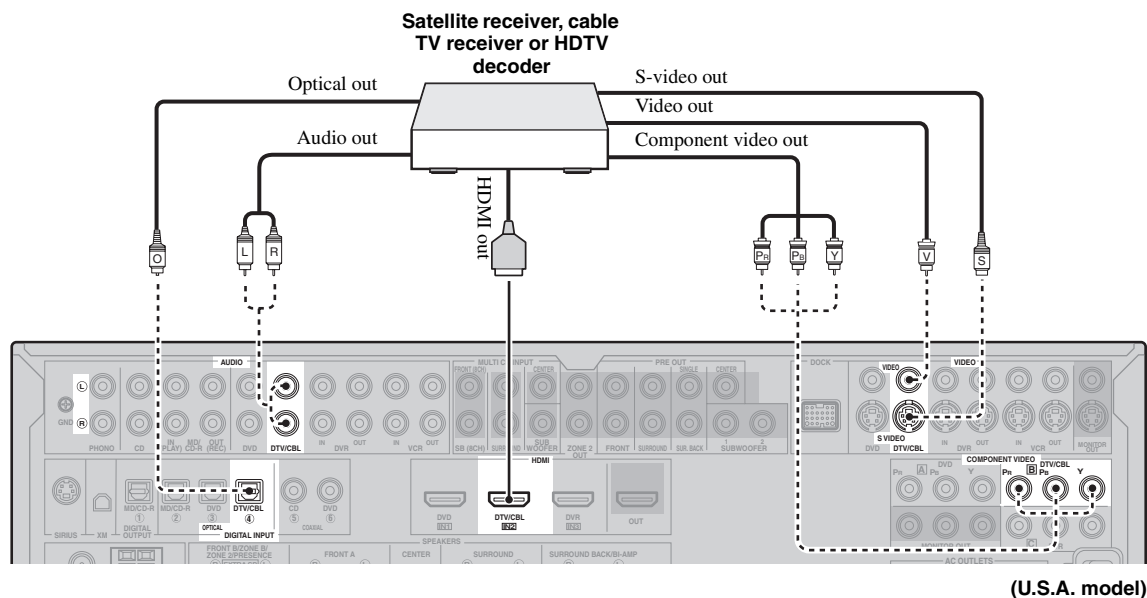
———— indicates recommended connections

----- indicates alternative connections
(One for the video connection, and one for the audio connection)

■ Connecting a DVD recorder, PVR or VCR



■ Connecting a set-top box



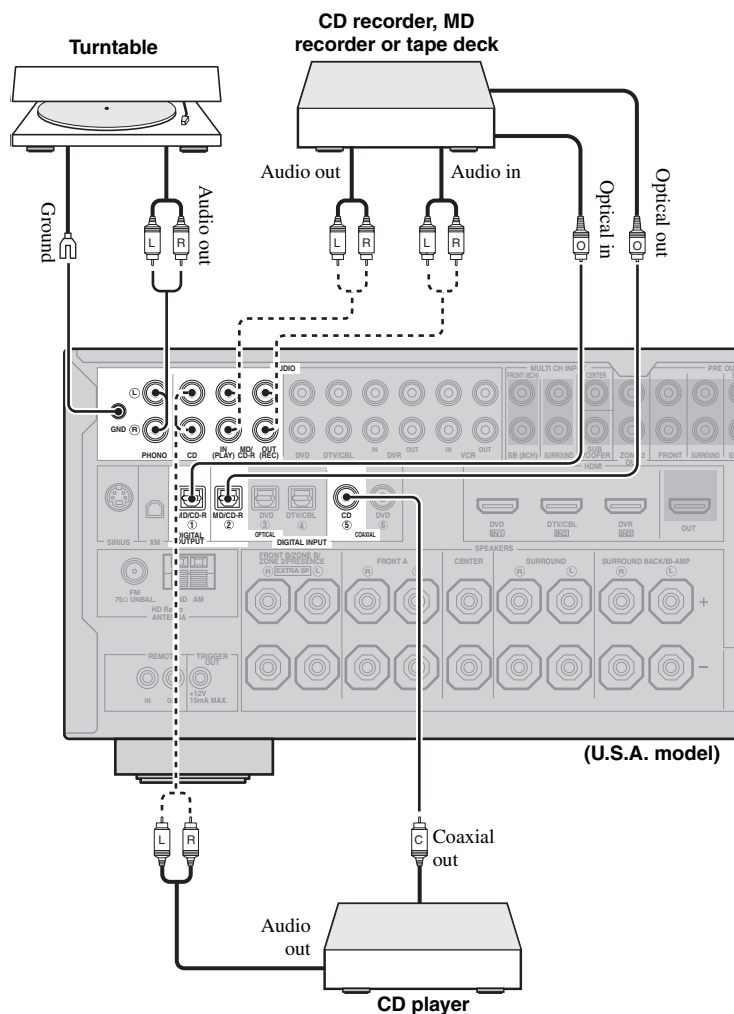
(U.S.A. model)

———— indicates recommended connections
 - - - - indicates alternative connections
 (One for the video connection, and one for the audio connection)

■ Connecting audio components

Notes

- To make a digital connection to a component other than the default component assigned to each the DIGITAL INPUT jack or the DIGITAL OUTPUT jack, select the corresponding setting for “OPTICAL OUT”, “OPTICAL IN”, or “COAXIAL IN” in “I/O ASSIGNMENT” (see page 95).
- Connect your turntable to the GND terminal of this unit to reduce noise in the signal. However, you may hear less noise without the connection to the GND terminal for some turntables.
- The PHONO jacks are only compatible with a turntable with an MM or a high-output MC cartridge. To connect a turntable with a low-output MC cartridge to the PHONO jacks, use an in-line boosting transformer or an MC-head amplifier.
- When you connect both the DIGITAL INPUT (OPTICAL) jack and the DIGITAL INPUT (COAXIAL) jack to an audio component, the priority is given to the DIGITAL INPUT (COAXIAL) jack.

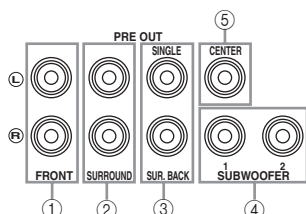


■ Connecting an external amplifier

This unit has more than enough power for any home use. However, if you want to add more power to the speaker output or if you want to use another amplifier, connect an external amplifier to the PRE OUT jacks. Each PRE OUT jack outputs the same channel signals as the corresponding SPEAKERS terminals.

Notes

- When you make connections to the PRE OUT jacks, do not make connections to the SPEAKERS terminals.
- The signals output at the FRONT PRE OUT jacks are affected by the TONE CONTROL settings (see page 52).
- Adjust the volume level of the subwoofer with the control on the subwoofer (see page 52).
- Some signals may not be output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jacks depending on the settings for “SPEAKER SET” (see page 87).



① FRONT PRE OUT jacks

Front channel output jacks.

② SURROUND PRE OUT jacks

Surround channel output jacks.

③ SUR.BACK PRE OUT jacks

Surround back channel output jacks. When you only connect one external amplifier for the surround back channel, connect it to the SINGLE jack.

Notes

- When “BI-AMP” is set to “ON”, this unit outputs the front channel audio signals at the SUR.BACK PRE OUT jacks.
- The audio signals output at the SUR.BACK PRE OUT jacks differ depending on the “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” setting (see pages 33 and 87).

④ SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jacks

Connect one or two subwoofers with a built-in amplifier.

Note

The signal output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 2 jack is the same as the one output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 1 jack.

⑤ CENTER PRE OUT jack

Center channel output jack.

■ Connecting a multi-format player or an external decoder

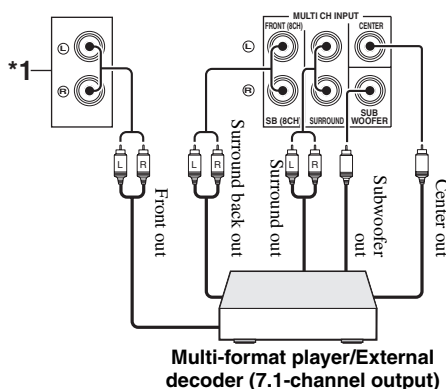
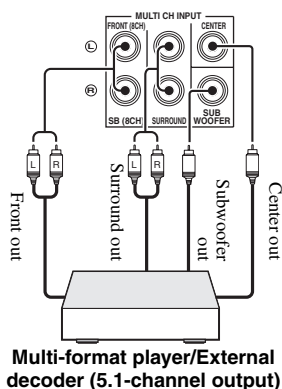
This unit is equipped with 6 additional input jacks (left and right FRONT, CENTER, left and right SURROUND and SUBWOOFER) for discrete multi-channel input from a multi-format player, external decoder, sound processor or pre-amplifier.

If you set “INPUT CH” to “8CH” in “MULTI CH” (see page 97), you can use the input jacks assigned as “FRONT” in “MULTI CH” (see page 97) together with the MULTI CH INPUT jacks to input 8-channel signals.

Connect the output jacks on your multi-format player or external decoder to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks. Be sure to match the left and right outputs to the left and right input jacks for the front and surround channels.

Notes

- When you select the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks as the input source (see page 43), this unit automatically turns off the digital sound field processor, and you cannot select sound field programs.
- This unit does not redirect signals input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks to accommodate for missing speakers. We recommend that you connect at least a 5.1-channel speaker system before using this feature.



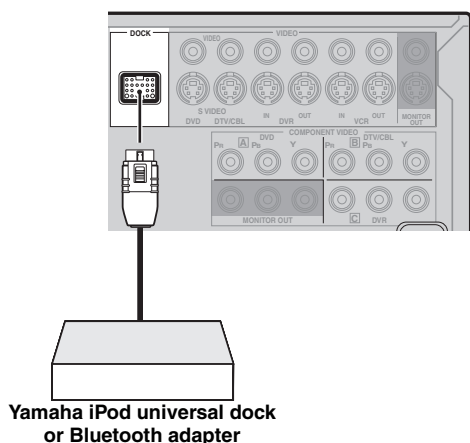
*1 The analog audio input jacks assigned as “FRONT” in “MULTI CH” (see page 97).

■ Connecting a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth adapter

This unit is equipped with the DOCK terminal on the rear panel that allows you to connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10, sold separately) or Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10 sold separately). Connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth adapter to the DOCK terminal on the rear panel of this unit using its dedicated cable.



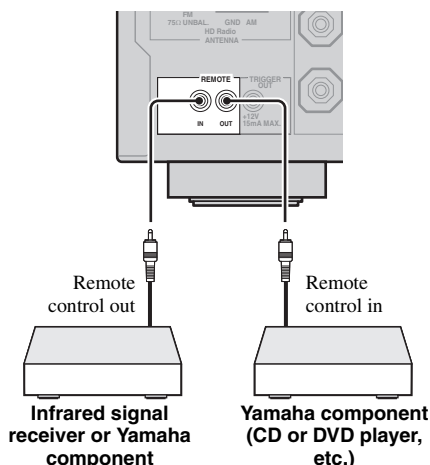
Refer to “Using iPod™” on page 70 for playback of your iPod and “Using Bluetooth™ components” on page 72 for playback of your Bluetooth components.



■ Using REMOTE IN/OUT jacks

When the components are the Yamaha products and have the capability of the transmission of the remote control signals, connect the REMOTE IN jack and REMOTE OUT jack to the remote control input and output jack with the monaural analog mini cable as follows.

(U.S.A. model)



- If the components have the capability of the SCENE control signals, this unit can automatically activate the corresponding components and start the playback when you use one of the SCENE buttons. Refer to the owner's manuals for details about the capability of the SCENE control signals of the components.
- If the component connected to the REMOTE OUT jack is not the Yamaha product, set "SCENE IR" in the advanced setup menu to "OFF" (see page 112).

Using the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel

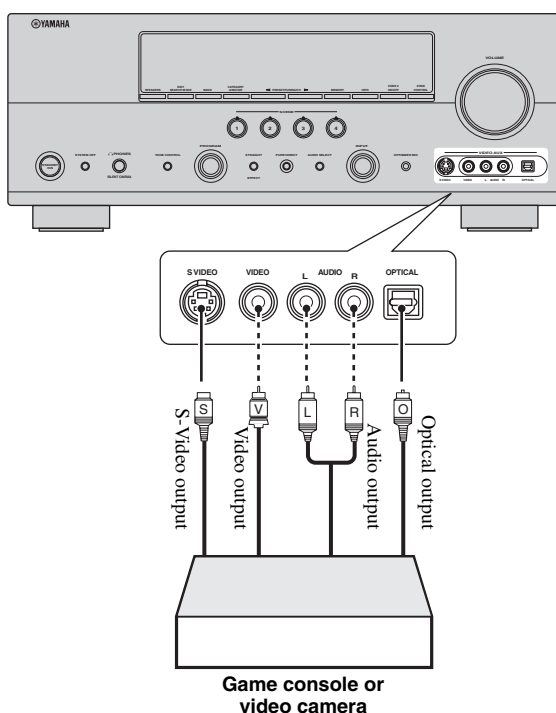
Use the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel to connect a game console or a video camera to this unit.

Caution

Be sure to turn down the volume of this unit and other components before making connections.

Notes

- The audio signals input at the DOCK terminal on the rear panel take priority over the ones input at the VIDEO AUX jacks.
- To reproduce the source signals input at these jacks, select "V-AUX" as the input source.



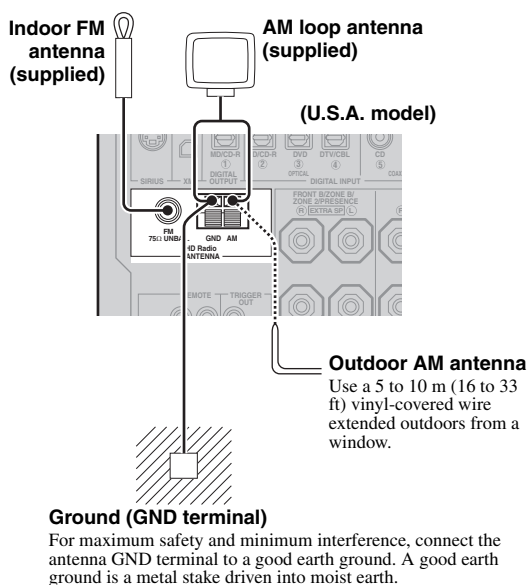
- indicates recommended connections
- indicates alternative connections
(One for the video connection, and one for the audio connection)

Connecting the FM and AM antennas

Both FM and AM indoor antennas are supplied with this unit. Connect each antenna correctly to the designated terminals. In general, these antennas should provide sufficient signal strength.

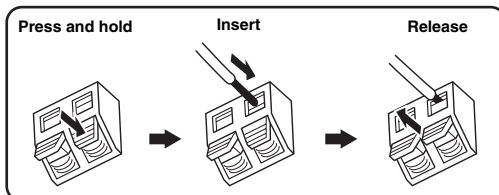
Notes

- The AM loop antenna should be placed away from this unit.
- A properly installed outdoor antenna provides clearer reception than an indoor one. If you experience poor reception quality, install an outdoor antenna. Consult the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about outdoor antennas.
- The AM loop antenna should always be connected, even if an outdoor AM antenna is connected to this unit.

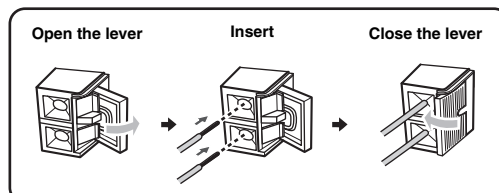


Connecting the wire of the AM loop antenna

(U.S.A. model)



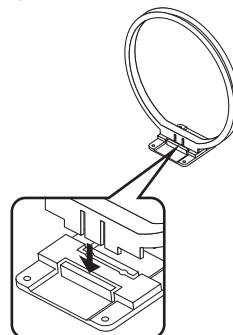
(Canada model)



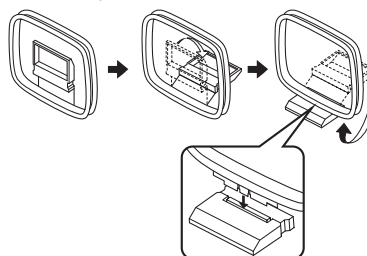
The wire of the AM loop antenna does not have any polarity and you can connect either end of the wire to AM or GND terminal.

Assembling the supplied AM loop antenna

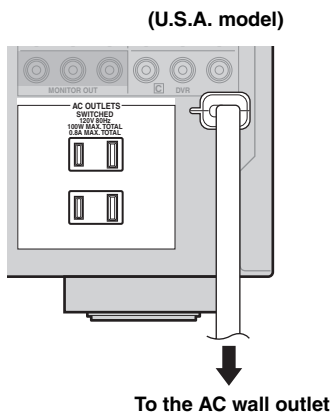
(U.S.A. model)



(Canada model)



Connecting the power cable



■ AC OUTLET(S) (SWITCHED)

U.K. and Australia models	1 outlet
Korea model	None
Other models	2 outlets

Use these outlet(s) to supply power to any connected components. Connect the power cable of your other components to these outlet(s). Power to these outlet(s) is supplied when the main zone or Zone 2 is turned on. However, power to these outlet(s) is cut off when the main zone and Zone 2 are turned off or when **SYSTEM OFF** on the front panel is pressed. For information on the maximum power or the total power consumption of the components that can be connected to these outlet(s), see "Specifications" on page 127.

Note

The power to AC OUTLET(S) of this unit is not cut off while this unit is charging connected iPod even when this unit is in the standby mode. When this unit completes charging or the iPod is disconnected, the power is cut off automatically when this unit is in the standby mode.

Memory back-up

The memory back-up circuit prevents the stored data from being lost even if this unit is in the standby mode. However, the stored data will be lost in case the power cable is disconnected from the AC wall outlet or if the power supply is cut off for more than one week.

Setting the speaker impedance

Caution

If you are to use 6 ohm speakers, set "SP IMP." to "6Ω MIN" as follows BEFORE using this unit. 4 ohm speakers can be also used as the front speakers.

- 1 Press **SYSTEM OFF** on the front panel to turn off this unit.
See page 29 for details.
- 2 Press and hold **TONE CONTROL** and then press **MAIN ZONE ON/OFF** to turn on this unit.
This unit turns on, and the advanced setup menu appears in the front panel display.



- 3 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector to select "SP IMP.".
"SP IMP." and the current speaker impedance setting ("8Ω MIN") appear in the front panel display.
- 4 Press **TONE CONTROL** repeatedly to select "6Ω MIN".
- 5 Press **SYSTEM OFF** to save the new setting and turn off this unit.

Note

The setting you made is reflected next time you turn on this unit.

Turning this unit on and off

■ Turning on this unit

Press **K MAIN ZONE ON/OFF** (or **14 POWER**) to turn on this unit.

The main zone is turned on.



- When you turn on this unit, there will be delay for a few seconds before this unit can reproduce sound.
- You can also turn on the main zone by pressing **9 SCENE** (or **11 SCENE**) buttons.

■ Set the main zone to the standby mode

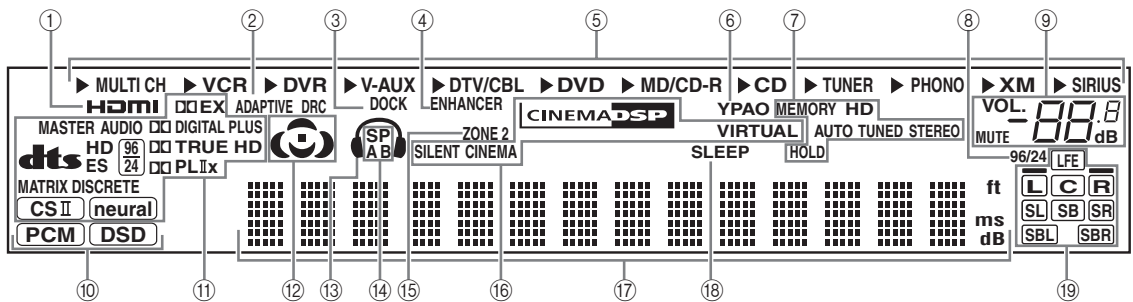
Press **K MAIN ZONE ON/OFF** (or **13 STANDBY**) to set the main zone to the standby mode.

In the standby mode, this unit consumes a small amount of power in order to receive infrared signals from the remote control.



Press **L SYSTEM OFF** to set the main zone and Zone 2 (see page 108) to the standby mode simultaneously.

Front panel display



① HDMI indicator

Lights up when the signal of the selected input source is input at the HDMI IN jacks (see page 18).

② ADAPTIVE DRC indicator

Lights up when the adaptive dynamic range control feature is turned on (see page 91).

③ DOCK indicator

- Lights up when you station your iPod in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit (see page 25) and V-AUX is selected as the input source. The DOCK indicator also lights up when this unit is charging the battery of the stationed iPod in the standby mode.
- Flashes while the connected Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) and the Bluetooth component is in the pairing or the Bluetooth adapter is searching the Bluetooth component (see page 72).
- Light up while the Yamaha Bluetooth adapter is connected to the Bluetooth component (see page 72).

④ ENHANCER indicator

Lights up when the Compressed Music Enhancer mode is selected (see page 50).

⑤ Input source indicators

The corresponding cursor lights up to show the currently selected input source.

Note

The XM and SIRIUS indicator is only applicable to the U.S.A. and Canada models and the cursor on the left of the XM indicator or SIRIUS indicator lights up only when "XM" or "SIRIUS" is selected as the input source.

⑥ YPAO indicator

Lights up when you run "AUTO SETUP" and when the speaker settings set in "AUTO SETUP" are used without any modifications (see page 32).

⑦ Tuner indicators

Lights up when this unit is in the FM, AM, XM Satellite Radio, or SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuning mode (see pages 53 to 69).

Note

HD indicator is only applicable to the U.S.A. model only and lights up when this unit is turned into the HD Radio reception band.

⑧ 96/24 indicator

Lights up when a DTS 96/24 signal is input to this unit.

⑨ MUTE indicator and VOLUME level indicator

- The MUTE indicator flashes while the MUTE function is on (see page 45).
- Indicates the current volume level.

⑩ Input signal indicators

Lights up when this unit is reproducing PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) or DSD (Direct Stream Digital) digital audio signals.

⑪ Decoder indicators

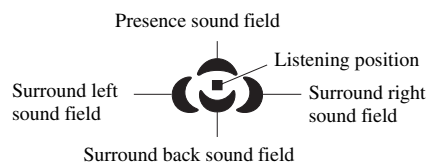
The respective indicator lights up when any of the decoders of this unit function.

Note

The neural indicator is only applicable to the U.S.A. and Canada models and CSII indicator is only applicable to the U.S.A. model.

⑫ Sound field indicators

Light up to indicate the active sound fields (see page 48).



⑬ Headphone indicator

Lights up when headphones are connected (see page 45).

⑭ SP A B indicators

Light up according to the set of front speakers activated (see page 43).

SP A: The FRONT A speakers are activated.

SP B: The FRONT B speakers are activated.

SP A B: The FRONT A and FRONT B speakers are activated.

⑮ ZONE2 indicator

Lights up when Zone 2 is turned on (see page 107).

⑯ DSP indicators

The respective indicator lights up when any of the sound field programs are selected (see page 48).

CINEMA DSP indicator

Lights up when you select a CINEMA DSP sound field program (see page 48).

VIRTUAL indicator

Lights up when the Virtual CINEMA DSP mode is active (see page 51).

SILENT CINEMA indicator

Lights up when headphones are connected and a sound field program is selected (see page 51).

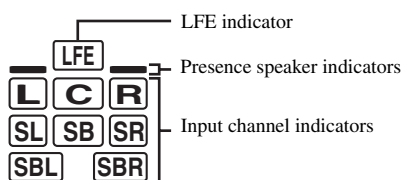
⑰ Multi-information display

Shows the name of the current sound field program and other information when adjusting or changing settings.

⑱ SLEEP indicator

Lights up while the sleep timer is on (see page 47).

⑲ Input channel and speaker indicators



Input channel indicators

- Indicate the channel components of the current digital input signal.
- Light up or flash according to the settings of the speakers when this unit is in the automatic setup procedure (see page 32) or in the “BASIC MENU” in “MANUAL SETUP” (see page 89).

Presence speaker indicators

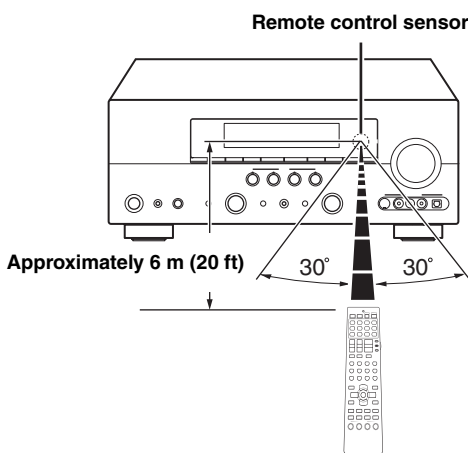
Light up or flash according to the setting of “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” when this unit is in the automatic setup procedure (see page 32) or in the “BASIC MENU” in “MANUAL SETUP” (see page 87).



You can make settings for the presence and surround back speakers automatically by running “AUTO SETUP” (see page 32) or manually by adjusting settings for “SUR.B L/R SP” (see page 88) in “SPEAKER SET”.

Using the remote control

The remote control transmits a directional infrared ray. Be sure to aim the remote control directly at the remote control sensor on this unit during operation.



Infrared window (①)

Outputs infrared control signals. Aim this window at the component you want to operate.

⑫ TRANSMIT indicator

Flashes while the remote control is sending infrared signals.

Operation mode selector (⑯)

The function of some buttons depends on the operation mode selector position.

AMP

Operates the amplifier function of this unit.

SOURCE

Operates the component selected with an input selector button (see page 103).

TV

Operates the TV assigned to either ④ DTV/CBL or ④ PHONO (see page 102).

Notes

- Do not spill water or other liquids on the remote control.
- Do not drop the remote control.
- Do not leave or store the remote control in the following types of conditions:
 - places of high humidity, such as near a bath
 - places of high temperatures, such as near a heater or stove
 - places of extremely low temperatures
 - dusty places
- To set the remote control codes for other components, see page 104.

Optimizing the speaker setting for your listening room (YPAO)

This unit employs the YPAO (Yamaha Parametric Room Acoustic Optimizer) technology which lets you avoid troublesome listening-based speaker setup and achieves highly accurate sound adjustments automatically. The supplied optimizer microphone collects and this unit analyzes the sound your speakers produce in your actual listening environment.

Using AUTO SETUP

Notes

- Be advised that it is normal for loud test tones to be output during the “AUTO SETUP” procedure.
- To achieve the best results, make sure the room is as quiet as possible while the “AUTO SETUP” procedure is in progress. If there is too much ambient noise, the results may not be satisfactory.



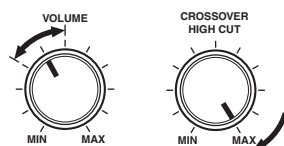
- Initial settings are indicated in bold.
- You can run “AUTO SETUP” using the system menu that appears in the OSD or in the front panel display. This manual uses the OSD illustrations to explain the “AUTO SETUP” procedure.
- Before performing operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.
- This unit uses the speakers connected to the FRONT A speaker terminals as the front speakers for the adjustment.

1 Make sure of the following check points.

Note

Before starting the automatic setup, check the following check points.

- ☐ Speakers are connected appropriately.
- ☐ Headphones are disconnected from this unit.
- ☐ This unit and the video monitor are turned on.
- ☐ This unit is selected as the video input source of the video monitor.
- ☐ The connected subwoofer is turned on and the volume level is set to about half way (or slightly less).
- ☐ The crossover frequency controls of the connected subwoofer is set to the maximum.



Controls of a subwoofer (example)

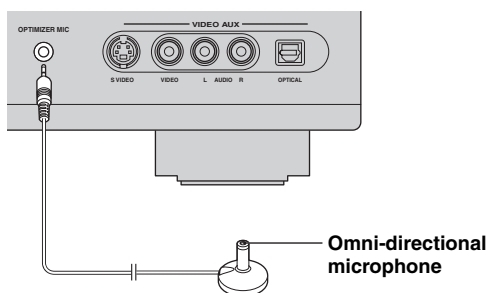
- ☐ The room is sufficiently quiet.



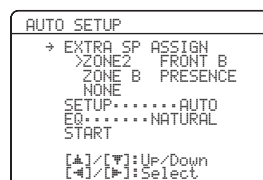
If you connect two subwoofers to this unit, the volume level of each subwoofer is set to slightly less.

2 Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.

“MIC ON View OSD menu” appears in the front panel display.

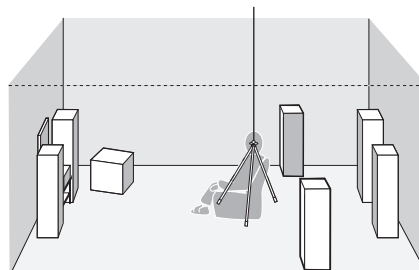


The following menu screen appears on the video monitor.



3 Place the optimizer microphone at your normal listening position on a flat level surface with the omni-directional microphone heading upward.

Optimizer microphone



It is recommended that you use a tripod (etc.) to affix the optimizer microphone at the same height as your ears would be when you are seated in your listening position. You can use the attached screw of a tripod (etc.) to fix the optimizer microphone to the tripod (etc.).

4 Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to select the desired setting for “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” and then press **Ⓢ**∇.

Extra speaker assignment

EXTRA SP ASSIGN

Selects the function of the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP terminals.

Choices: **FRONT B**, ZONE2, ZONE B, PRESENCE, NONE

- **When you use the alternative front speaker system (see page 43)**
Select “FRONT B”.
- **When you use the Zone 2 speakers (see page 107)**
Select “ZONE2” to set the function of the speakers to the Zone 2 speakers. This unit drives the Zone 2 speakers by using the internal amplifier.
- **When you want to use another front speaker system in Zone B**
Select “ZONE B”.
- **When you use the presence speakers (see page 13)**
Select “PRESENCE” to set the function of the speakers to the presence speakers.
- **When you do not use the EXTRA SP terminals**
Select “NONE” to deactivate the EXTRA SP terminals.

Note

If you select “ON” in “BI-AMP” (see page 112), you cannot select “PRESENCE” or “ZONE2” in “EXTRA SP ASSIGN”.

5 Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to select “SETUP” and then press **Ⓢ**∇.

Choices: **AUTO**, RELOAD, UNDO, DEFAULT

- Select “AUTO” to automatically run the entire “AUTO SETUP” procedure.
- Select “RELOAD” to reload the last “AUTO SETUP” settings and override the previous settings.
- Select “UNDO” to undo the last “AUTO SETUP” settings and restore the previous settings.
- Select “DEFAULT” to reset the “AUTO SETUP” parameters to the initial factory settings.

Notes

- “RELOAD” or “UNDO” is available only when you have previously run “AUTO SETUP” and confirmed the results.
- “RELOAD” or “UNDO” is not available when you change the setting of “BI-AMP” in the advanced setup (see page 112) or “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” in “BASIC MENU” (see page 87).

6 Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to select the desired setting of “EQ”.

Parametric equalizer type EQ

Parametric equalizer adjusts the level of the specified frequency bands. This unit automatically selects the crucial frequency bands for the listening room and adjusts the level of the selected frequency bands to create a cohesive sound field in the room. You can select the type of the parametric equalizer adjustment from the following choices.

Choices: **NATURAL**, FLAT, FRONT

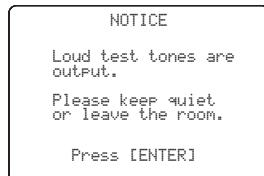
- Select “NATURAL” to average out the frequency response of all speakers with higher frequencies being all speakers to achieve more natural sound. Recommended if the FLAT setting sounds a little harsh.
- Select “FLAT” to average the frequency response of all speakers. Recommended if all of your speakers are of similar quality.
- Select “FRONT” to adjust the frequency response of each speaker in accordance with the sound of your front speakers. Recommended if your front speakers are of much higher quality than your other speakers.

7 Press **Ⓢ** to select “START” and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER to start the setup procedure.

The following message appears in the OSD.

When this unit starts the automatic setup procedure, loud test tones are output at the speakers.

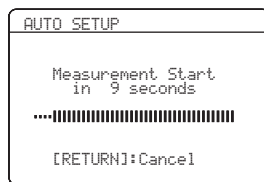
For more accurate measurements, keep quiet and move to the wall where speakers are not around. We recommend that you leave the listening room during the automatic setup procedure.



Once you perform the next operation, this unit starts the automatic setup procedure.

8 Press **Ⓢ**ENTER to start the automatic setup procedure.

The following screen appears in the OSD and setup procedure starts in 10 seconds.



Loud test tones are output from each speaker during the auto setup procedure. Once all items are set, the “RESULT” display appears in the OSD.

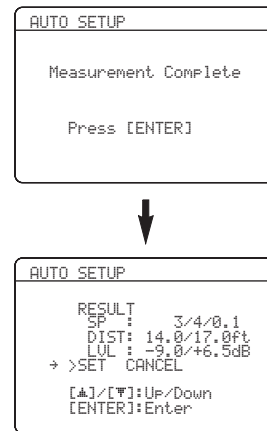
Notes

- During the automatic setup procedure, do not perform any operation on this unit.
- We recommend that you get out of the room while this unit is in the auto setup procedure. It takes approximately 3 minutes for this unit to complete the auto setup procedure.



Press **Ⓢ**Δ to cancel the automatic setup procedure.

9 Make sure that the following screen appears and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER to display the result screen.



The results displayed under “RESULT” are as follows:

Number of speakers SP

Displays the number of speakers connected to this unit in the following order:

Front/Back/Subwoofer

Speaker distance DIST

Displays the speaker distance from the listening position in the following order:

Closest speaker distance/Farthest speaker distance

Speaker level LVL

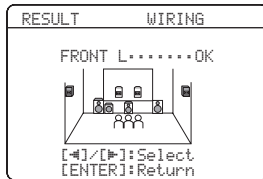
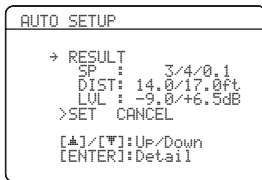
Displays the speaker output level in the following order:

Lowest speaker output level/Highest speaker output level

Notes

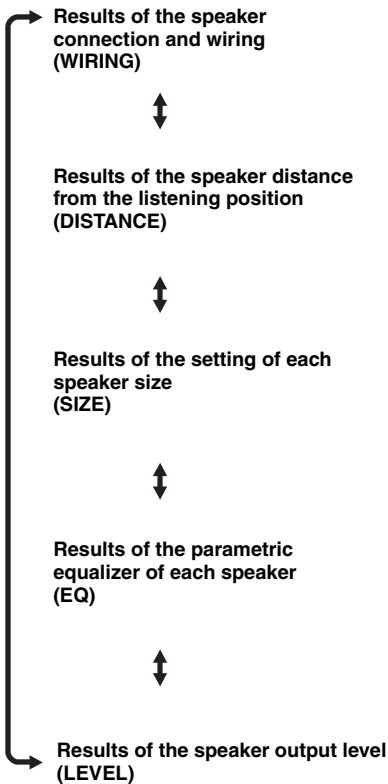
- The signal output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 2 jack is the same as the one output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT 1 jack. Therefore, even if you connect two subwoofers, the number of the connected subwoofer is indicated as “0.1”.
- If “E-10:INTERNAL ERROR” appears during the testing procedure, restart from step 4.
- If you selected other than “AUTO” in step 5, no test tones are output.
- If an error occurs during the “AUTO SETUP” procedure, the setup procedure is canceled and an error screen appears. For details, see “If an error screen appears” on page 36.
- When this unit detects potential problems during the “AUTO SETUP” procedure, “WARNING” and the number of warning messages appears in the above of “RESULT” (see page 36).
- Depending on the listening environment, “SWFR PHASE:REV” appears during the automatic procedure and “SUBWOOFER PHASE” in “SOUND MENU” (see page 89) is automatically set to “REVERSE”.

- 10** Press **Ⓔ** and then **Ⓔ** **ENTER** to display the setup results in detail.



- 11** Press **Ⓔ** **</>** repeatedly to toggle between the setup result displays.

Press **Ⓔ** **▲/▼** to toggle between the parameters in a results.

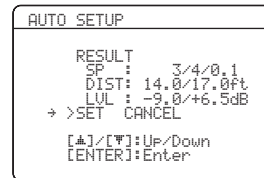


If you are not satisfied with the results or want to manually adjust each parameter, use “MANUAL SETUP” (see page 82).

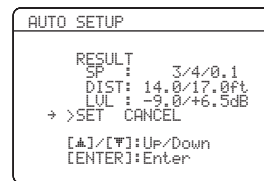
Notes

- The distances displayed in the “DISTANCE” results may be longer than the actual distance depending on the characteristics of your subwoofer.
- In the “EQ” results, different values may be set for the same frequency to provide finer adjustments.

- 12** Press **Ⓔ** **ENTER** to return to the top result display.



- 13** Make sure the pointer is pointing at “SET” and “CANCEL” and then press **Ⓔ** **</>** to select “SET” or “CANCEL”.



Choices: **SET**, **CANCEL**

- Select “SET” to confirm the “AUTO SETUP” results.
- Select “CANCEL” to cancel the “AUTO SETUP” results.

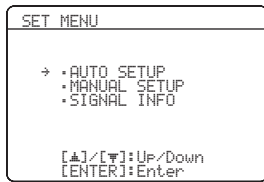
- 14** Press **Ⓔ** **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

The following screen appears. Disconnect the optimizer microphone from this unit. The optimizer microphone is sensitive to heat. Keep it away from direct sunlight and do not place it on top of this unit.



15 Press **ⓈENTER** to confirm your selection.

The top "SET MENU" screen appears in the OSD.



16 Press **ⓈSET MENU** to exit from "SET MENU".

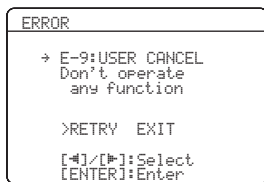


If you change speakers, speaker positions, or the layout of your listening environment, run "AUTO SETUP" again to recalibrate your system.

■ If an error screen appears

Press **Ⓢ△ / ▽ / < / >** to select "RETRY" or "EXIT" and then press **ⓈENTER**.

The following display is an example when "E-9:USER CANCEL" appears in the OSD.



Choices: **RETRY**, **EXIT**

- Select "RETRY" to retry the "AUTO SETUP" procedure.
- Select "EXIT" to exit from the "AUTO SETUP" procedure.



If "E-5:NOISY" appears, "PROCEED" also appears in the choices. When you select "PROCEED", this unit continues the measurements and settings, but the settings may not be optimal.

■ If "WARNING" appears

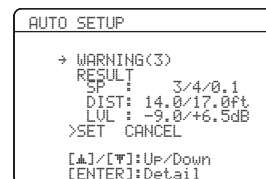
When this unit detects potential problems during the "AUTO SETUP" procedure, "WARNING" appears in the top result display. Check the warning messages to correct your speaker settings.

Note

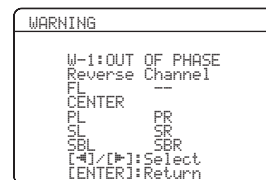
Warnings differ from errors in that warnings do not cancel the "AUTO SETUP" procedure.

1 Make sure the pointer is pointing at "WARNING" and then press **ⓈENTER** to display the detailed information about the warning.

The number on the right of "WARNING" indicates the number of warning messages.



2 Press **Ⓢ< / >** repeatedly to toggle between the warning displays.



- For details about each warning message, see the "AUTO SETUP" section in "Troubleshooting" on page 120.
- When the corresponding warning message is not applicable to a speaker, "—" is displayed instead.
- If "SWFR: TOO LOUD" or "SWFR: TOO LOW" appears in the "W-3: LEVEL ERROR" display, adjust the volume level of the subwoofer(s).

3 Press **ⓈENTER** to return to the top result display.

Selecting the SCENE templates

This unit is equipped with 19 preset SCENE templates for various situations of using this unit. As the initial factory setting, the following SCENE templates are assigned to each SCENE button (see page 8):

SCENE 1: DVD Viewing

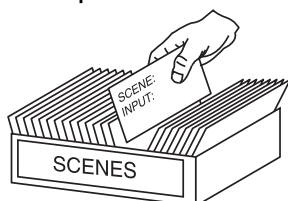
SCENE 2: Disc Listening

SCENE 3: TV Viewing

SCENE 4: Radio Listening

If you want to use other SCENE templates, you can select the desired SCENE templates from the SCENE template library and assign the templates to the selected SCENE buttons on the front panel and the remote control.

Select the desired SCENE template

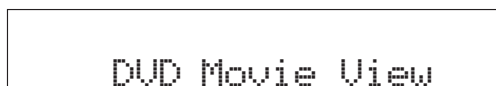


SCENE template library (Image)



Assign the SCENE template to the SCENE button

- 2 Rotate the **Ⓐ** INPUT selector (or set the operation mode selector to **Ⓐ** AMP and then press **Ⓑ** </>) to select the desired template.



- 3 Press the **Ⓒ** SCENE (or **Ⓓ** SCENE) button again to confirm the selection.

The selected SCENE template is assigned to the SCENE button.



Front panel

or



Remote control

Note

Once the desired SCENE templates are assigned to the corresponding SCENE buttons, you need to set the input source of the SCENE template on the remote control. See page 41 for details.

Selecting the desired SCENE template to the SCENE buttons

- 1 Press and hold the **Ⓒ** SCENE (or **Ⓓ** SCENE) button for 3 seconds.

The indicator on the selected SCENE button on the front panel starts to flash, and the name of the currently assigned SCENE template appears in the front panel display.

3 seconds



Front panel

or

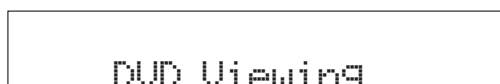
3 seconds



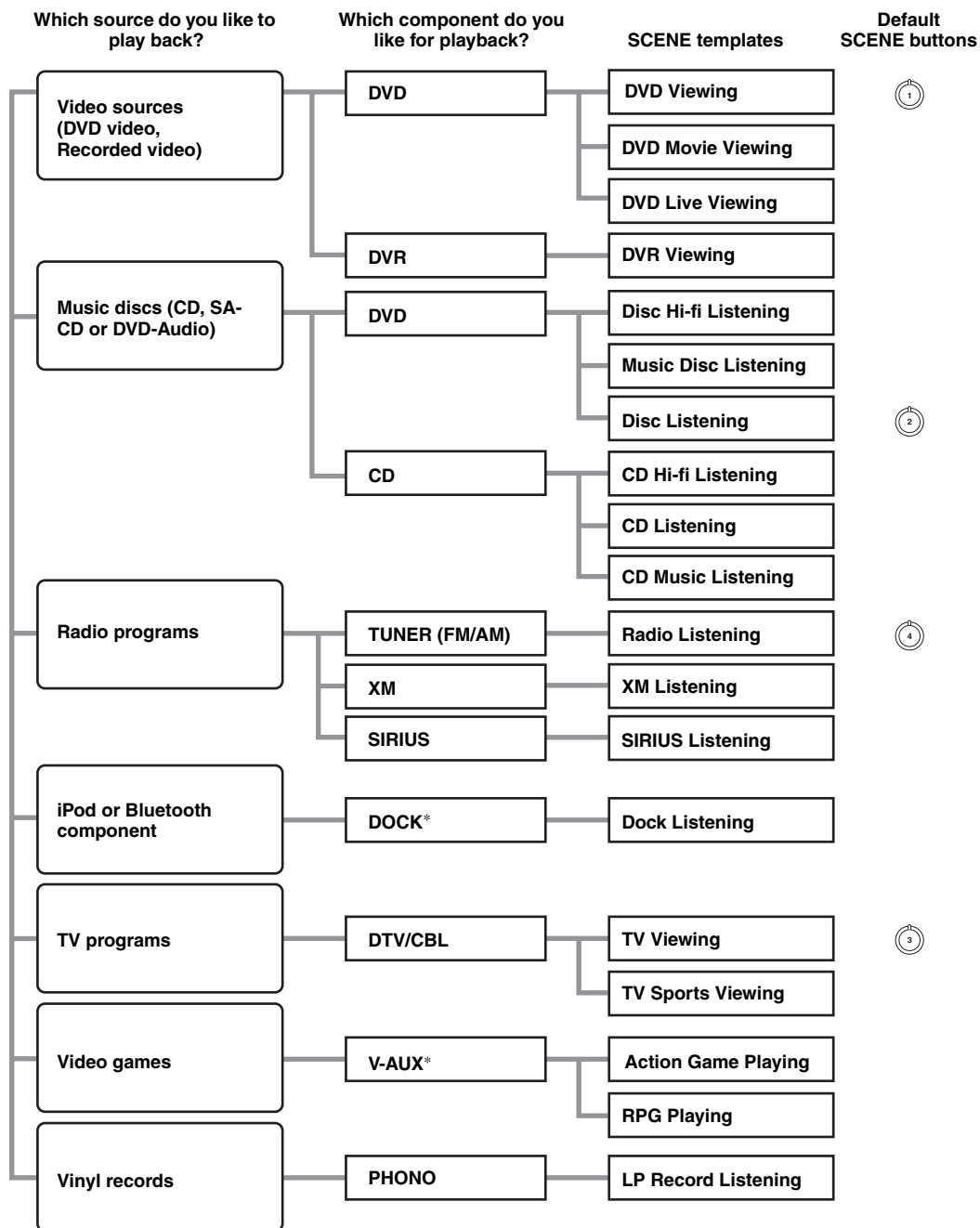
Remote control



Flashes



■ Which SCENE template would you like to select?



Note

* When iPod is connected to the Yamaha iPod universal dock or a Bluetooth component is connected to the Bluetooth adapter, this unit plays back the audio sources input at the DOCK terminal.



You can create your original SCENE templates by editing the preset SCENE templates. See page 40 for details.

■ Preset SCENE templates descriptions

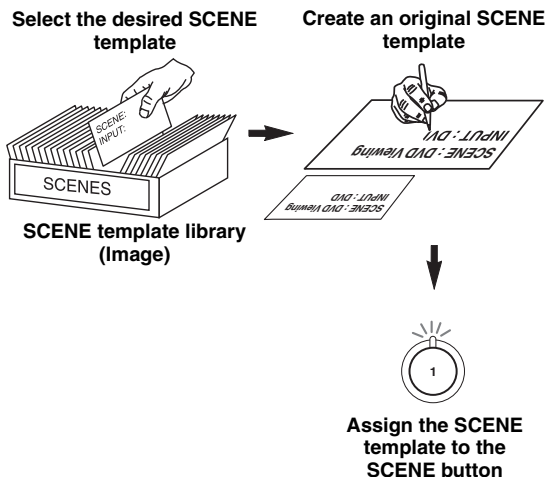
The illustrations of the SCENE button in the following table indicate the assigned SCENE buttons in the default setting.

SCENE template	Input source	Playback mode	Features
DVD Viewing 	DVD*	Straight	Select this SCENE template when you play back general contents on the DVD player.
DVD Movie Viewing	DVD*	MOVIE Sci-Fi	Select this SCENE template when you play back movies on your DVD player.
DVD Live Viewing	DVD*	ENTERTAINMENT Music Video	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy the music live video on your DVD player.
DVR Viewing	DVR	MOVIE Drama	Select this SCENE template when you play back movies on your digital video recorder.
Disc Hi-fi Listening	DVD*	Pure Direct	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy the high fidelity sound of the music discs on your DVD player.
Music Disc Listening	DVD*	STEREO 2ch Stereo	Select this SCENE template when you play back music discs on your DVD player.
Disc Listening 	DVD*	STEREO 7ch Stereo	Select this SCENE template when you play back music sources on your DVD player as the background music.
CD Hi-fi Listening	CD*	Pure Direct	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy the high fidelity sound of the music discs on your CD player.
CD Listening	CD*	STEREO 7ch Stereo	Select this SCENE template when you play back music discs on your CD player.
CD Music Listening	CD*	STEREO 2ch Stereo	Select this SCENE template when you play back music source on your CD player as the background music.
Radio Listening 	TUNER	MUSIC ENHANCER 7ch Enhancer	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy FM or AM radio programs.
XM Listening	XM	MUSIC ENHANCER 7ch Enhancer	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy XM Satellite Radio programs.
SIRIUS Listening	SIRIUS	MUSIC ENHANCER 7ch Enhancer	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy SIRIUS Satellite Radio programs.
Dock Listening	V-AUX	MUSIC ENHANCER 7ch Enhancer	Select this SCENE template when you play back music on your iPod stationed in a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth component that is connected to the Bluetooth adapter.
TV Viewing 	DTV/CBL	Straight	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy general programs on your TV.
TV Sports Viewing	DTV/CBL	ENTERTAINMENT Sports	Select this SCENE template when you enjoy sports programs on your TV.
Action Game Playing	V-AUX	ENTERTAINMENT Action Game	Select this SCENE template when you play action games such as car racing and FPS games.
RPG Playing	V-AUX	ENTERTAINMENT Roleplaying Game	Select this SCENE template when you play role-playing games.
LP Record Listening	PHONO	Pure Direct	Select this SCENE template when you play back vinyl records on your turntable.

* When the connected DVD player or CD player has the capability of the SCENE control signals and is connected to the REMOTE OUT jack of this unit, this unit operates the DVD player or CD player worked with the SCENE features.

Creating your original SCENE templates

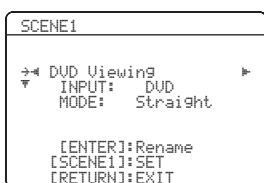
You can create your original SCENE templates for each SCENE button. You can refer to the preset 19 SCENE templates to create the original SCENE templates.



1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.

2 Press and hold the desired ⑪ SCENE button for 3 seconds.

The SCENE template customizing screen appears on the video monitor.



Note

When the SCENE template you want to customize is not assigned to any of the ⑪ SCENE buttons, press ⑧<|/> repeatedly to recall the desired SCENE template on the menu screen.

3 Press ⑧△/▽ to select the desired parameter of the SCENE template and then ⑧<|/> to select the desired value of the selected parameter.

You can adjust the following parameters for a SCENE template:

- **INPUT:** The input source component.
- **MODE:** The active sound field programs, "Straight" or "Pure Direct" mode.

4 Press the ⑪ SCENE button again to confirm the edit.



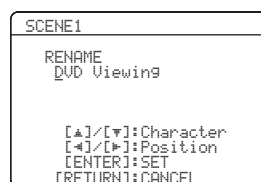
An asterisk mark (*) appears by the name of the original SCENE template.

Notes

- Once the desired SCENE templates are assigned to the corresponding ⑪ SCENE buttons, you need to set the input source of the SCENE template on the remote control. See page 41 for details.
- You can create a customized SCENE template for each SCENE button, and if you create another customized SCENE template, this unit overwrites the old customized SCENE template with the new one.
- The newly created template is only available for the assigned SCENE button.

Rename the SCENE templates

Select the name of the SCENE template at step 3 of "Creating your original SCENE templates" and then press ⑧ENTER.



- Press ⑧△/▽ to select the desired character.
- Press ⑧<|/> to place an "_" (underscore) under the space or the desired character.
- Press ⑨RETURN to cancel the new name.
- Press ⑧ENTER to confirm the new name.

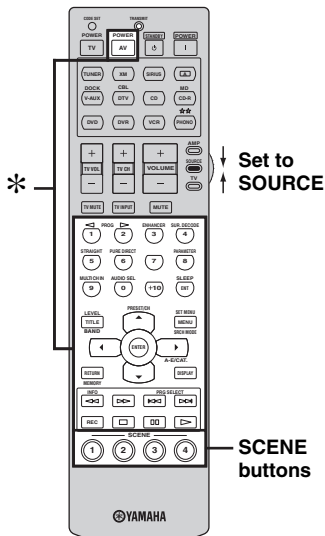
Using the remote control for the SCENE feature

■ Controlling the input source components in the SCENE mode

You can operate both this unit and the input source component by using the remote control. You must set the appropriate remote control code for each input source in advance (see page 104).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑮SOURCE**.

- 1 Press the desired **⑪SCENE** button on the remote control.
- 2 Press the desired buttons in the * area below to control the input source component of the selected SCENE template.



Note

* These buttons control the input source component. See page 103 for details of the function of each button.

■ Setting the input source of the customized SCENE template on the remote control

If you customize the input source of the selected SCENE template, you must set the input source of the SCENE template on the remote control to operate the input source component correctly.

- 1 Press the desired **⑪SCENE** button on the remote control.
- 2 Press and hold the **⑪SCENE** button and the desired input selector button (**④**).
The **⑫TRANSMIT** indicator flashes twice.
- 3 Keep holding down the buttons pressed in step 2 until the **⑫TRANSMIT** indicator flashes twice again.

Note

If the setting of the input source is not successful, the **⑫TRANSMIT** indicator flashes repeatedly. In this case, repeat the setup procedure.

Playback

Caution

Extreme caution should be exercised when you play back CDs encoded in DTS. If you play back a CD encoded in DTS on a DTS-incompatible CD player, you will only hear some unwanted noise that may damage your speakers. Check whether your CD player supports CDs encoded in DTS. Also, check the sound output level of your CD player before you play back a CD encoded in DTS.



To play DTS-encoded CDs when using a digital audio connection, set "DECODER MODE" in "INPUT MENU" to "DTS" before the playback (see page 96).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

Basic procedure

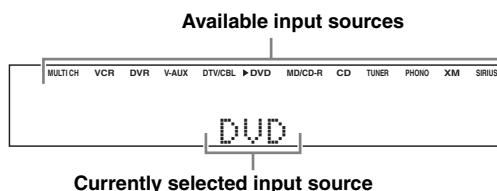
1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.



See page 46 to display the input source information on the video monitor.

2 Rotate the **INPUT** selector (or press one of the input selector buttons (4)) to select the desired input source.

The name of the currently selected input source appears in the front panel display for a few seconds.



The corresponding input selector button on the remote control for the currently selected input source lights up for approximately 5 seconds after you press any buttons on the remote control, showing which source component is currently being operated.

3 Start playback on the selected source component or select a broadcast station.

- Refer to the operating instructions for the source component.
- See page 53 for details about FM or AM tuning instructions.
- See page 60 for details about XM Satellite Radio tuning instructions.
- See page 65 for details about SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuning instructions.
- See page 70 for details about iPod operations.
- See page 72 for details about Bluetooth operations.

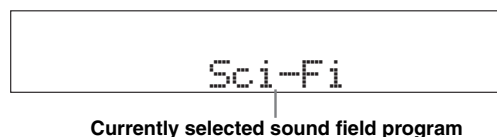
4 Rotate **VOLUME** (or press **VOLUME +/-**) to adjust the volume to the desired output level.



- See page 52 to adjust the level of each speaker.
- This does not affect the AUDIO OUT (REC) level.
- You can set the initial volume level and maximum volume level (see page 91).

5 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector (or press **PROG </>** repeatedly) to select the desired sound field program.

The name of the selected sound field program appears in the front panel display. See page 48 for details about sound field programs.



Note

Sound field programs cannot be selected when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source (see page 43).



- Choose a sound field program based on your listening preference, not merely on the name of the program.
- When you select an input source, this unit automatically selects the last sound field program used with the corresponding input source.
- To display information about the currently selected sound field program in the OSD, see page 74 for details.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

Selecting the MULTI CH INPUT component

Use this feature to select the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks (see page 25) as the input source.

Rotate the **INPUT selector to select “MULTI CH” (or press **MULTI CH IN**).**

“MULTI CH” appears in the front panel display.



Use “MULTI CH” menu in “INPUT MENU” to set the parameters for MULTI CH INPUT (see page 97).

Note

Sound field programs cannot be selected when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source.

Selecting the front speaker set

Use this feature to turn the front speaker system (FRONT A and/or FRONT B) on or off.

Press **SPEAKERS on the front panel repeatedly to turn on or off the set of front speakers connected to the FRONT A and/or EXTRA SP speaker terminals.**

The active front speaker set changes as follows.



Notes

- FRONT A and B or FRONT B setting is not available when “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” is set to “PRESENCE”, “ZONE 2” or “NONE” (see page 87).
- Turn off the volume level of this unit when you switch the front speaker setting.

■ Using the Zone B feature

When you set “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” to “ZONE B” (see page 87), you can use the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP speaker terminals in another room (Zone B).

Press **SPEAKERS on the front panel repeatedly to turn on or off the Zone B speakers.**

When you activate the Zone B speakers, all the speakers in the main room are muted.

Note

If you select the sound field program and activate the Zone B speakers, Virtual CINEMA DSP activates automatically (see page 51).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓂAMP**.

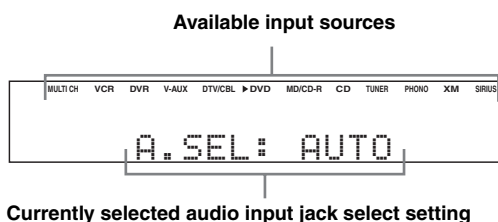
Selecting audio input jacks (AUDIO SELECT)

This unit comes with a variety of input jacks. Use this feature (audio input jack select) to switch between input jacks when more than one input jack is assigned to the same input source.



- We recommend that you set the audio input jack select to “AUTO” in most cases.
- You can adjust the default audio input jack select of this unit by using “AUDIO SELECT” in “OPTION MENU” (see page 100).

Press **ⓂAUDIO SELECT** (or **ⓂAUDIO SEL**) repeatedly to select the desired audio input jack select setting.



AUDIO SELECT	Function
AUTO	Automatically selects input signals in the following order: (1) HDMI (2) Digital signals (3) Analog signals
HDMI	Selects only HDMI signals. When HDMI signals are not input, no sound is output.
COAX/OPT	Automatically selects input signals in the following order: (1) Digital signals input at the COAXIAL jack (2) Digital signals input at the OPTICAL jack When no signals are input, no sound is output.
ANALOG	Selects only analog signals. If no analog signals are input, no sound is output.

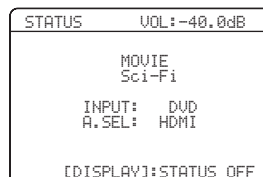
Note

This feature is not available when no digital input jacks (OPTICAL, COAXIAL and HDMI) are assigned. In addition, HDMI is not available as an audio input jack select setting when the HDMI IN jacks are not used. Use “I/O ASSIGNMENT” in “INPUT MENU” to reassign the respective input jack (see page 95).

Displaying the current status of this unit on a video monitor

You can display the operating information of this unit on a video monitor.

- 1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.
- 2 Press **ⓂDISPLAY** on the remote control.
The current status screen appears in the OSD.



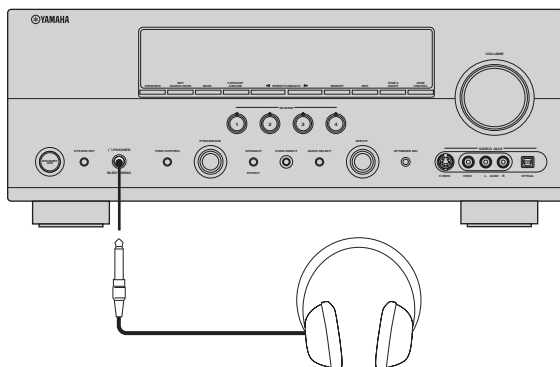
- You can select the amount of time that the current status is displayed in the OSD by using the “OSD-AMP” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- To turn off the status screen, press **ⓂDISPLAY** again.

Note

The OSD signal is not output at the DVR and VCR VIDEO OUT jacks and will not be recorded.

Using your headphones

Connect a pair of headphones with a stereo analog audio cable plug to the PHONES jack on the front panel.



When you select a sound field program, SILENT CINEMA mode activates automatically (see page 51).

Notes

- When you connect headphones, no signals are output at the speaker terminals.
- All Dolby Digital and DTS audio signals are mixed down to the left and right headphone channels.

Muting the audio output

Press **17 MUTE** on the remote control to mute the audio output.

Press **17 MUTE** again to resume the audio output.



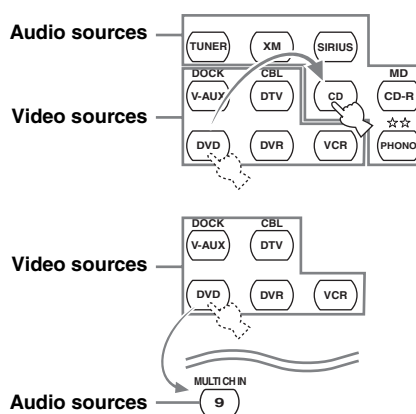
- You can also rotate **14 VOLUME** (or press **15 VOLUME +/-**) to resume the audio output.
- You can adjust the muting level by using the "MUTE TYPE" parameter in "VOLUME MENU" (see page 91).
- The MUTE indicator flashes in the front panel display when the audio output is muted and disappears from the front panel display when the audio output is resumed.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **18 AMP**.

Playing video sources in the background of an audio source

You can combine a video image from a video source with sound from an audio source. For example, you can enjoy listening to classical music while viewing beautiful scenery from the video source on the video monitor.

Press the input selector buttons (4) on the remote control to select a video source and then an audio source.



- You can also select "MULTI CH" as the audio source (see page 43). Set the operation mode selector to **18 AMP** and then press **25 MULTI CH IN**.
- Set the "BGV" parameter in the "MULTI CH" menu to the desired setting to select the default background video input source of the MULTI CH INPUT sources (see page 97).

Displaying the input source information

You can display the audio and video information of the current input signal.

- 1 Set the operation mode selector to **⑩AMP** and then press **⑨SET MENU** on the remote control.

The top “SET MENU” display appears in the OSD.



- 2 Press **⑧▽** repeatedly to select “**SIGNAL INFO**” and then press **⑧ENTER**.

The audio information about the input source appears in the OSD.

- 3 Press **⑧◀/▶** to toggle between the audio and video information displays.

- 4 Press **⑨SET MENU** on the remote control again to exit from “SET MENU”.

Audio information

Information	Descriptions
FORMAT	Signal format. When this unit cannot detect a digital signal, it automatically switches to analog input.
SAMPLING	The number of samples per second taken from a continuous signal to make a discrete signal.
CHANNEL	The number of source channels in the input signal (front/surround/LFE). For example, a multi-channel soundtrack with 3 front channels, 2 surround channels and LFE, is displayed as “3/2/0.1”.
BITRATE	The number of bits passing a given point per second.
FLAG	Flag data encoded in DTS, Dolby Digital, or PCM signals that cue this unit to automatically switch decoders (“Surround EX”, etc.).

Notes

- “—” appears when this unit cannot display the corresponding information.
- (U.S.A. model only)
When the HD Radio signals include the flag data, the flag information appears. We recommend that you select “SUR. DECODE” to activate the corresponding surround decoder (see page 79).

Video information

Information	Descriptions
HDMI SIGNAL	Type of the source video signals and the video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack of this unit.
HDMI RES.	Resolution of the input signal (analog or HDMI) and the output signal (HDMI). When input video signals are composite video or S-video signals, the input video signals are indicated as “Composite” or “S-Video”.
ANALOG RES.	Resolution of the analog video signals output at the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks of this unit.
HDMI ERROR (HDMI MESSAGE)	Error message for HDMI sources or connected HDMI devices.

Note

“—” appears when this unit cannot display the corresponding information.

HDMI error and message

Message	Cause
DEVICE OVER	The number of the connected HDMI components is over the limit.
HDCP ERROR	HDCP authentication failed.
Out of Res.	Out of resolution. The connected monitor is not compatible with the resolution of the input video signal.

Using the sleep timer

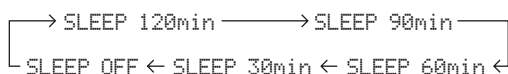
Use this feature to automatically set the main zone to the standby mode after a certain amount of time. The sleep timer is useful when you are going to sleep while this unit is playing or recording a source. The sleep timer also automatically turns off any external components connected to the AC OUTLET(S) (see page 28).

Note

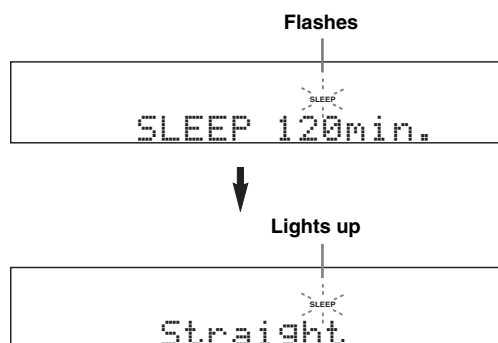
Even if this unit is in the standby mode, this unit does not cut off the power to AC OUTLET(S) while charging connected iPod (see page 28).

Set the operation mode selector to **ⒷAMP and then press **ⒷSLEEP** repeatedly to set the amount of time.**

Each time you press **ⒷSLEEP**, the front panel display changes as shown below.

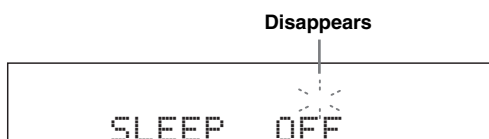


The SLEEP indicator flashes while you are switching the amount of time for the sleep timer. Once the sleep timer is set, the SLEEP indicator lights up in the front panel display, and the display returns to the selected sound field program.



Canceling the sleep timer

Press **ⒷSLEEP on the remote control repeatedly until “SLEEP OFF” appears in the front panel display.**



The SLEEP indicator turns off, and “SLEEP OFF” disappears from the front panel display after a few seconds.



The sleep timer setting can also be canceled by pressing **ⒷSTANDBY** (or **ⒷMAIN ZONE ON/OFF**) to set the main zone to the standby mode.

Sound field programs

This unit is equipped with a variety of precise digital decoders that allow you to enjoy multi-channel playback from almost any stereo or multi-channel sound source. This unit is also equipped with a Yamaha digital sound field processing (DSP) chip containing several sound field programs which you can use to enhance your playback experience.

Selecting sound field programs

Rotate the **ⓃPROGRAM** selector (or set the operation mode selector to **ⓈAMP** and then press **ⓂPROG** **◀/▶** repeatedly).

The name of the selected sound field program appears in the front panel display and in the OSD.

Notes

- When you select an input source, this unit automatically selects the last sound field program used with the corresponding input source.
- Sound field programs cannot be selected when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source (see page 43).
- When you play back the Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio, or DTS-HD High Resolution Audio sources, this unit does not activate any sound field program.
- When the sampling frequency of the input sources are higher than 96 kHz, this unit does not apply any sound field programs.

Sound field program descriptions



Select a sound field program based on your listening preference, not merely on the name of the program, etc.

■ For audio music sources



For audio music sources, we also recommend that you use the Pure Direct mode (see page 52).

Notes

- The available sound field parameters differ depending on the settings of the speakers.
- “DIALG.LIFT” is available only when “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” in “SPEAKER SET” is set to “PRESENCE” (see page 87).

CLASSICAL

Program	Descriptions
Hall in Munich	This sound field simulates a concert hall with approximately 2500 seats in Munich, using stylish wood for the interior finishing as normal standards for European concert halls. Fine, beautiful reverberations spread richly, creating a calming atmosphere. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the arena.
Hall in Vienna	This is an approximately 1700-seated, middle-sized concert hall with a shoebox shape that is traditional in Vienna. Pillars and ornate carvings create extremely complex reflections from all around the audience, producing a very full, rich sound.
Chamber	This program creates a relatively wide space with a high ceiling like an audience hall in a palace. It offers pleasant reverberations that are suitable for courtly music and chamber music.

LIVE/CLUB

Program	Descriptions
Cellar Club	This program simulates a live house with a low ceiling and homey atmosphere. A realistic, live sound field features powerful sound as if the listener is in a row in front of a small stage.
The Roxy Theatre	This is the sound field of a rock music live house in Los Angeles, with approximately 460 seats. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the hall.
The Bottom Line	This is the sound field at stage front in The Bottom Line, that was a famous New York jazz club once. The floor can seat 300 people to the left and right in a sound field offering real and vibrant sound.

■ For various sources

Notes

- The available sound field parameters and the created sound fields differ depending on the input sources and the settings of this unit.
- "DIALOG.LIFT" is available only when "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" in "SPEAKER SET" is set to "PRESENCE" (see page 87).

ENTERTAINMENT

Program	Descriptions
Sports	This program allows the listeners to enjoy stereo sport broadcasts and studio variety programs with enriched live feeling. In sports broadcasts, the voices of the commentator and sportscaster are positioned clearly at the center while the atmosphere of the stadium expands in an optimum space to offer the listeners with a feeling of presence in the stadium.
Action Game	This sound field has been suitable for action games such as car racing and FPS games. It uses the reflection data that limits the effects range per channel in order to offer a powerful playing environment with a being-there feeling by enhancing various effects tones while maintaining a clear sense of directions.
Roleplaying Game	This sound field has been suitable for role-playing and adventure games. It combines the sound field effects for movies and the sound field designs for "Action Game" to represent the depth and 3D feeling of the field during play, while offering movie-like surround effects in the movie scenes in the game.
Music Video	This sound field offers an image of a concert hall for live performance of pop, rock and jazz music. The listener can indulge oneself in a hot live space thanks to the presence sound field that emphasizes the vividness of vocals and solo play and the beat of rhythm instruments, and to the surround sound field that reproduces the space of a big live hall.

■ For movie sources



You can select the desired decoder used with following sound field program (except "Mono Movie"). See page 79 for details.

Notes

- The available sound field parameters and the created sound fields differ depending on the input sources and the settings of this unit.
- "DIALOG.LIFT" is available only when "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" in "SPEAKER SET" is set to "PRESENCE" (see page 87).

MOVIE

Program	Descriptions
Standard	This program creates a sound field emphasizing the surrounding feeling without disturbing the original acoustic positioning of multi-channel audio such as Dolby Digital and DTS. It has been designed with the concept of "an ideal movie theater", in which the audience is surrounded by beautiful reverberations from the left, right and rear.
Spectacle	This program represents the spectacular feeling of large-scale movie productions. It reproduces a broad theater sound field matching the cinemascope and wider-screen movies with an excellent dynamic range from very small to extremely large sound.
Sci-Fi	This program clearly reproduces the finely elaborated sound design of the latest science fiction and special effects-featuring movies. You can enjoy a variety of cinematographically created virtual spaces reproduced with clear separation between dialog, sound effects and background music.

Program	Descriptions
Adventure	This program is ideal for precisely reproducing the sound design of action and adventure movies. The sound field restrains reverberations but puts emphasis on reproducing a powerful space expanded widely to the left and right. The reproduced depth is also restrained relatively to ensure the separation between audio channels and the clarity of the sound.
Drama	This sound field features stable reverberations that match a wide range of movie genres from serious dramas to musicals and comedies. The reverberations are modest but offer an optimum 3D feeling, reproducing effects tones and background music softly but cubically around clear words and center positioning in a way that does not fatigue the listener even after long hours of viewing.
Mono Movie	This program is provided for reproducing monaural video sources such as a classic movie in an atmosphere of a good old movie theater. The program produces the optimum expansion and reverberation to the original audio to create a comfortable space with a certain sound depth.

Note

The available parameters differ depending on the input sources and the settings of this unit.

STEREO

Program	Descriptions
2ch Stereo	Use this program to mix down multi-channel sources to 2 channels.
7ch Stereo	Use this program to output sound from all speakers. When you play back multi-channel sources, this unit downmixes the source to 2 channels, and then outputs the sound from all speakers. This program creates a larger sound field and is ideal for background music at parties, etc.

■ The Compressed Music Enhancer

MUSIC ENHANCER

Program	Descriptions
Straight Enhancer	Use this program to enhance the sound nearest to the original depth and width of the 2-channel or multi-channel compression artifacts.
7ch Enhancer	Use this program to play back compression artifacts in 7-channel stereo.

■ Surround decode mode

SUR. DECODE

Program	Descriptions
Sur. Decoder	Select this program to playback sources with selected decoders. You can playback 2-channel sources on multi-channels. See page 79 for details.

■ Using sound field programs without surround speakers (Virtual CINEMA DSP)

Virtual CINEMA DSP allows you to enjoy the CINEMA DSP programs without surround speakers. It creates virtual speakers to reproduce the natural sound field. When you set “SUR. L/R SP” to “NONE” (see page 88), Virtual CINEMA DSP activates automatically whenever you select a sound field program (see page 48).

Note

Virtual CINEMA DSP will not activate even when “SUR. L/R SP” is set to “NONE” (see page 88) in the following cases:

- when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source (see page 43).
- when headphones are connected to the PHONES jack.
- when this unit is in the “7ch Stereo” mode.

■ Enjoying multi-channel sources and sound field programs with headphones (SILENT CINEMA)

SILENT CINEMA allows you to enjoy multi-channel music or movie sound, including Dolby Digital and DTS sources, through ordinary headphones. SILENT CINEMA activates automatically whenever you connect headphones to the PHONES jack while listening to sound field programs (see page 48). When activated, the SILENT CINEMA indicator lights up in the front panel display.

Notes

- SILENT CINEMA does not activate when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source (see page 43).
- SILENT CINEMA is not effective when the “Pure Direct” (see page 52) or “2ch Stereo” mode (see page 50) is selected, or when this unit is in the “Straight” mode (see page 51).

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

Enjoying unprocessed input sources (Straight decoding mode)

When this unit is in the “Straight” mode, 2-channel stereo sources are output from only the front left and right speakers. Multi-channel sources are decoded straight into the appropriate channels without any additional effect processing.

Press **STRAIGHT** (or **STRAIGHT**) to select “Straight”.

■ Deactivating the “Straight” mode

Press **STRAIGHT** (or **STRAIGHT**) so that “Straight” disappears from the front panel display.

The sound effect is turned back on.

Using audio features

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

Adjusting the speaker level

You can adjust the output level of each speaker while listening to a music source. This is also possible when playing sources input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks.

Note

This operation will override the level adjustments made in “AUTO SETUP” (see page 32) and “SP LEVEL” (see page 89).

- 1 Press **LEVEL** on the remote control and then **Δ / ▽** repeatedly to select the speaker you want to adjust.

Display	Adjusted speaker
FRONT L	Front left speaker
FRONT R	Front right speaker
CENTER	Center speaker
SUR. L	Surround left speaker
SUR. R	Surround right speaker
SBL	Surround back left speaker
SBR	Surround back right speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PRNS L	Presence left speaker
PRNS R	Presence right speaker



- The available speaker channels differ depending on the setting of the speakers.
- When the video monitor is turned on, the “LEVEL” adjustment menu appears in the video monitor.

- 2 Press **◀ / ▶** to adjust the speaker output level.

- Press **▶** to increase the value.
 - Press **◀** to decrease the value.
- Control range: -10.0 dB to +10.0 dB

- 3 Press **LEVEL** to turn off the speaker level adjustment display.

Enjoying pure hi-fi sound

Use the Pure Direct mode to enjoy the pure high fidelity sound of the selected source. When the Pure Direct mode is activated, this unit plays back the selected source with the least circuitry.

- Press **PURE DIRECT** (or **PURE DIRECT**) to turn the Pure Direct mode on or off.

The **PURE DIRECT** button on the front panel lights up while this unit is in the Pure Direct mode. The front panel display automatically dims.

Notes

- The following operations are not possible when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode:
 - switching the sound field program
 - displaying the OSD
 - adjusting the “SET MENU” parameters (except for level settings)
 - operating video functions (video conversion, etc.)
- The Pure Direct mode is automatically canceled whenever this unit is turned off.



The front panel display turns on momentarily when an operation is performed.

Adjusting the tonal quality

Use this feature to adjust the balance of bass and treble for the front left and right speaker channels.



Speaker and headphone adjustments are stored independently.

- 1 Press **TONE CONTROL** on the front panel repeatedly to select the high-frequency response (TREBLE) or the low-frequency response (BASS).

- 2 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector to adjust the high-frequency response (TREBLE) or the low-frequency response (BASS).

Control range: -6 dB to +6 dB

Notes

- If you increase or decrease the high-frequency or the low-frequency sound to an extreme level, the tonal quality of the surround speakers may not match.
- TONE CONTROL is not effective when PURE DIRECT is selected, or when MULTI CH INPUT is selected as the input source.

FM/AM tuning

Overview

You can use two tuning modes to tune into the desired FM/AM station:

Frequency tuning mode (AUTO TUNING/MANUAL TUNING)

You can search or specify the frequency of the desired FM/AM station automatically or manually (see “Basic tuning operations” on this page).

Preset tuning mode (PRESET TUNING)

You can preset the desired FM/AM station in advance, and then recall the station by specifying the preset group and number (see “Using station preset feature” on page 54).

Note

Orient the connected FM and AM antennas for the best reception.

Basic tuning operations

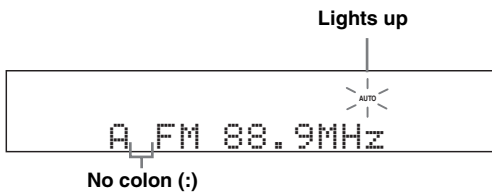
Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④TUNER**.

- 1 Rotate the **⑧INPUT** selector (or press **④TUNER**) to select “TUNER” as the input source.
- 2 Press **③BAND** (or **⑦BAND**) to select the reception band.
“FM” or “AM” appears in the front panel display.
- 3 Press **⑨SEARCH MODE** (or **⑰SRCH MODE**) to select the desired tuning mode.

Automatic tuning mode (AUTO TUNING)

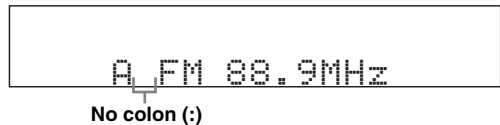
Use this feature when the signal from the station you want to select is strong.

When this unit is in the automatic tuning mode, “AUTO TUNING” appears in the front panel display for a moment. The AUTO indicator appears in the front panel display.



Manual tuning mode (MANUAL TUNING)

Use this feature if the signal from the station you want to select is weak and you cannot tune by using the automatic tuning. When this unit is in the manual tuning mode, “MANUAL TUNING” appears in the front panel display for a moment.



- Manually tuning into an FM station automatically switches the tuner to monaural reception to increase the signal quality.
- (U.S.A. model only)
If you tune into a hybrid HD Radio station by using the manual tuning mode, this unit automatically selects the analog radio service. You cannot select the HD Radio audio programs (see page 57) and display the HD Radio information (see page 58).

Preset tuning mode (PRESET TUNING)

Use this feature to recall the preset stations. When this unit is in the preset tuning mode, “PRESET TUNING” appears in the front panel display for a moment. Frequency tuning is not possible. See page 54 for details.

- 4 Press **⑨PRESET/TUNING/CH** **</>** (or **⑧PRESET/CH** **△/▽**) repeatedly to tune into the desired station.
 - Press **⑨>** (or **⑧△**) to tune into a higher frequency.
 - Press **⑨<** (or **⑧▽**) to tune into a lower frequency.



- When this unit is tuned into a station, the TUNED indicator lights up.
- Hold down the button to continue searching when this unit is in the manual tuning mode.
- Press **ⓈINFO** (or **ⓈINFO**) repeatedly to toggle the frequency information and sound field program information in the front panel.
- (U.S.A. model only)
If the station that this unit is tuned into is an HD Radio station, you can toggle the HD Radio information in the front panel display by pressing **ⓈINFO** (or **ⓈINFO**) repeatedly. See page 58 for details.
- (U.S.A. model only)
If the station that you tune this unit into is the HD Radio station, the HD indicator also appears in the front panel display. See page 57 for details about the HD Radio features.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓈSOURCE** and then press **ⓈTUNER**.

■ Direct frequency tuning

Use this feature to tune into the desired station directly by entering the frequency.

- 1 Press **ⓈBAND** on the remote control repeatedly to select the desired reception band.

“FM” or “AM” appears in the front panel display.

- 2 Press **ⓈSEARCH MODE** (or **ⓈSRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “AUTO TUNING” or “MANUAL TUNING”.



No colon (:))



If a colon (:) appears in the front panel display, manual tuning is not possible. Press **ⓈSEARCH MODE** (or **ⓈSRCH MODE**) to turn the colon (:) off.

- 3 Enter the frequency of the desired station by pressing the numeric buttons (**Ⓢ**).

Example: To tune into 103.7 MHz



If the entered frequency is out of the range of the FM/AM tuning, “WRONG STATION!” appears in the front panel display and then this unit automatically tunes into the last selected station.

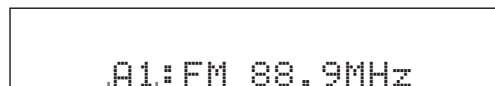
Using station preset feature

Use this feature to store up to 40 stations FM/AM stations (A1 to E8: 8 preset station numbers in each of the 5 preset station groups). Preset the desired stations to this unit by using the automatic or manual preset tuning features in advance (see “Automatic station preset” and “Manual station preset” on page 55).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓈSOURCE** and then press **ⓈTUNER**.

- 1 Press **ⓈSEARCH MODE** (or **ⓈSRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “PRESET TUNING”.
- 2 Press **ⓈPRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **ⓈPRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) to select the desired preset station number (A1 to E8).

The preset station group and number appear in the front panel display along with the station band and frequency.



Preset group and preset station number



You can select the preset station group (A to E) by pressing **ⓈA/B/C/D/E** (or **ⓈA-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly.

Note

- (U.S.A. model only)
When you recall one of the sub-audio program (HD2 to HD8) of an FM HD Radio station, it takes a few seconds for this unit to recall the desired program. While this unit recalls the sub-audio program, this unit outputs the sound of the analog service of the station.
- (U.S.A. model only)
If the selected sub-audio program is currently not available, this unit is tuned into the main audio program, and if the main audio program is also not available, this unit is tuned into the analog service.

Automatic station preset

You can use the automatic preset tuning feature to store up to 40 FM stations with strong signals (A1 to E8: 8 preset station numbers in each of the 5 preset station groups) in order.

(U.S.A. model only)

You can use the automatic preset tuning feature to store up to 40 AM HD Radio, FM HD Radio, and analog FM radio stations with strong signals.

- 1 Rotate the **INPUT** selector (or press **TUNER**) to select “TUNER” as the input source.

(U.S.A. model)

- 2 Press **BAND** (or **BAND**) to select the desired reception band.

“FM” or “AM” appears in the front panel display.

This unit searches the stations in the selected band and then another band.

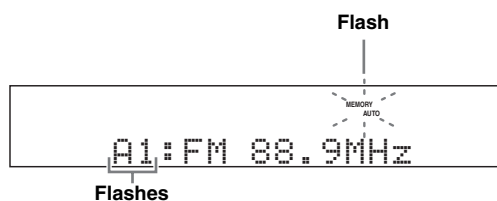
(Canada model)

- 2 Press **BAND** (or **BAND**) to select “FM” as the reception band.

“FM” appears in the front panel display.

- 3 Press and hold **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**) for more than 3 seconds.

The preset station number as well as the MEMORY and AUTO indicators flashes. After approximately 5 seconds, automatic presetting starts from the current frequency and proceeds toward higher frequencies.



When automatic preset tuning is completed, the MEMORY indicator disappears.



- You can specify the preset number from which this unit stores FM stations. Press **A/B/C/D/E** (or **A-E/CAT**. $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) and then **PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **PRESET/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly after you perform step 3 to select the preset station number under which the first station will be stored.
- To cancel the automatic station preset, press **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**) again.

Notes

- (U.S.A. model only)
When this unit stores the FM HD Radio stations with this feature, this unit stores only the main audio program of the stations (HD1). When you want to store the sub-audio programs of the FM HD Radio stations, preset the stations manually.
- Any stored station data existing under a preset station number is cleared when you store a new station under the same preset station number.
- If the number of received stations does not reach 40 (E8), automatic preset tuning automatically stops after searching for all the available stations and copy the stored stations to the rest preset station numbers.
- (Canada model only)
Only FM stations with sufficient signal strength are stored automatically by automatic preset tuning. If the station you want to store is weak in signal strength or an AM radio station, tune into it manually and store it as described in “Manual station preset” below.

Manual station preset

Use this feature to store the AM or FM stations with weak signals manually.

(U.S.A. model only)

You can store the analog AM/FM radio stations and AM/FM HD Radio stations manually, and you can also store the sub-audio programs of FM HD Radio station.

- 1 Tune into a station.

See page 53 for tuning instructions.

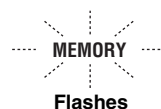


(U.S.A. model only)

To store a sub-audio program of the HD Radio station (HD2 to HD8), press **PRG SELECT** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ repeatedly to select the desired audio program (see page 57).

- 2 Press **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**).

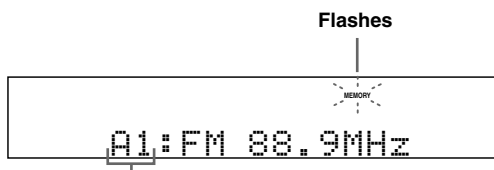
The MEMORY indicator flashes in the front panel display for approximately 30 seconds.



To cancel the preset memory mode, press **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**) again.

3 Press $\textcircled{E}$ PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or $\textcircled{8}$ PRESET/CH $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to select a preset station group and number (A1 to E8) while the MEMORY indicator is flashing.

- Press $\textcircled{E}\triangleright$ (or $\textcircled{8}\triangle$) to select a higher preset station group and number.
- Press $\textcircled{E}\triangleleft$ (or $\textcircled{8}\nabla$) to select a lower preset station group and number.



The displayed station has been stored as A1.



You can select the preset station group (A to E) by pressing $\textcircled{0}$ A/B/C/D/E (or $\textcircled{8}$ A-E/CAT. $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly.

4 Press $\textcircled{F}$ MEMORY (or $\textcircled{9}$ MEMORY) while the MEMORY indicator is flashing.

The station band and frequency appear in the front panel display with the preset station group and number you have selected. The MEMORY indicator disappears from the front panel display.

Notes

- Any stored station data existing under a preset station number is cleared when you store a new station under the same preset station number.
- The reception mode (stereo or monaural) is stored along with the station frequency.

Exchanging preset stations

You can exchange the assignments of two preset stations with each other. The example below describes the procedure to exchange preset station “E1” with “A5”.

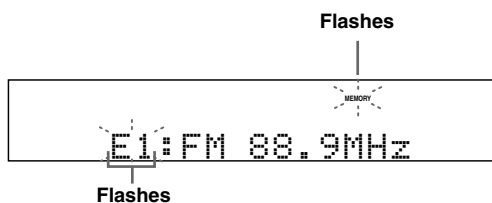
Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to $\textcircled{16}$ SOURCE and then press $\textcircled{4}$ TUNER.

1 Select preset station “E1” using $\textcircled{0}$ A/B/C/D/E and $\textcircled{E}$ PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$.

See “Using station preset feature” on page 54.

2 Press and hold $\textcircled{B}$ EDIT for more than 3 seconds.

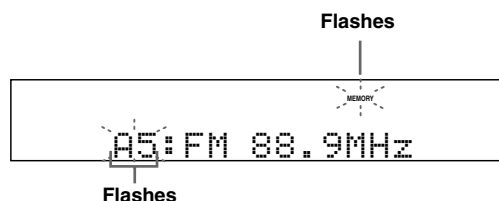
“E1” and the MEMORY indicator flash in the front panel display.



3 Select preset station “A5” using $\textcircled{0}$ A/B/C/D/E and $\textcircled{E}$ PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$.

“A5” and the MEMORY indicator flash in the front panel display.

See “Using station preset feature” on page 54.



4 Press $\textcircled{B}$ EDIT again.

“EXCHANGE E1-A5” appears in the front panel display and the assignments of the two preset stations are exchanged.

Using HD Radio™ features (U.S.A. model only)

HD Radio technology is a new technology that enables FM and AM radio stations to broadcast programs digitally. Digital broadcasting provides listeners with radically improved audio quality and reception as well as new data services. Furthermore, supplemental program services allow listeners to select from up to 8 HD Radio programs multicast on a single FM HD Radio channel. For further information on HD Radio technology, visit “<http://www.ibiguity.com/>”. This unit is equipped with an HD Radio reception feature, facilitating CD quality FM broadcasts as well as analog FM stereo quality AM broadcasts. In addition, this unit can receive both audio and data (such as song titles, artist names, program types, and comments) from supplemental program services (HD1 to HD8).



When the HD Radio signals include the audio signal flag data (“Neural”, etc.), the flag information appears in the “SIGNAL INFO” screen (see page 46). We recommend that you select “SUR. DECODE” as the sound field program and activate the surround decoder corresponding to the flag information (see page 80).

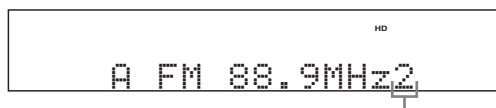
Notes

- The tuning method for HD Radio stations are same as analog FM/AM radio stations; however, if you tune into a hybrid HD Radio station by using the manual tuning mode, this unit automatically selects the analog radio service. Use the automatic tuning mode, preset tuning mode, or direct frequency tuning to tune into the desired HD Radio station (see pages 53 and 54).
- This unit is capable of receiving both hybrid and all-digital HD Radio station signals. However, this unit may not automatically receive all-digital FM station signals and the automatic tuning operation may stop. In this case, enter the frequency of the desired all-digital FM HD Radio station directly by using the numeric buttons (Ⓢ) (see page 54).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓈSOURCE** and then press **ⓈTUNER**.

Selecting HD Radio™ audio programs

Use this feature to select one of the 8 HD Radio audio programs (HD1 to HD8) when the unit is in the tuner mode. Each audio program contains data programs. When the selected FM HD Radio station provides some audio programs, currently selected audio program number appears in the front panel display as follows.



Currently selected audio program

Press **ⓈPRG SELECT **⏮** / **⏭** on the remote control repeatedly to toggle between HD Radio audio programs.**

The HD indicator may disappear from the front panel display while toggling between data programs.



You can also select the desired HD Radio audio program by pressing the numeric key. While this unit is in the automatic or manual tuning mode, press a numeric button (1-8) (Ⓢ) and then **ⓈENT**.

Notes

- Only 1 HD Radio audio program (HD1) is available for AM broadcasts, while up to 8 audio programs (HD1 to HD8) are available for FM broadcasts. The audio programs from HD2 to HD8 can be selected only when they contain data programs.
- When reception for an audio program ceases, the HD indicator disappears from the front panel display and HD1 is automatically selected after approximately 20 seconds.
- Some audio programs may not contain data programs depending on the broadcasting station and the time period.

Displaying HD Radio™ information

Use this feature to display the HD Radio information in the front panel display or video monitor.

■ Front panel display

Press **ⓈINFO** (or **ⓈINFO**) repeatedly to toggle between the following HD Radio information displays.

STATION INFO 1	e.g.) A FM 88.9MHz2
Preset station group and number/Frequency/Audio program (only when multiple audio programs are available)	



STATION INFO 2	e.g.) WXYZ-FM <2/3>
Station name/Audio program (only when multiple audio programs are available)	



CATEGORY INFO	e.g.) Classic Rock
Program category	



SONG INFO	e.g.) Frankie Ziffer
Artist name/Song title	



ALBUM INFO	e.g.) Made-to-order
Album title	



ANTENNA INFO	e.g.) ANTENNA ■■■-
Antenna reception level	



DSP PROG. INFO	e.g.) The Bottom Line
Sound field program	



Back to "STATION INFO 1"



- You can set the front panel display mode by using "FL SCROLL" in "DISPLAY SET" (see page 98).
- Press **ⓈENTER** repeatedly to hold and release the current HD Radio information. While this unit is holding the information, the HOLD indicator flashes in the front panel display.

■ Video monitor

Press **ⓈDISPLAY** on the remote control.

The following information is displayed in the video monitor.

	TUNER Information	ANT:■■■	[5]
			[6]
[1]	A1:FM 88.9MHz2	PRESET	
	WXYZ-FM HD <2/3>		[7]
[2]	♫:Classic Rock		
	A:Frankie Ziffer		[8]
[3]	♪:Road to India		
[4]	🎵:Made-to-order		

[1] Preset station Category and number/frequency/Audio program (only when multiple audio programs are available)

[2] Program category

[3] Song title

[4] Album title

[5] Antenna reception level

[6] Tuning mode (see page 53)

[7] Station name/Audio program (only when multiple audio programs are available)

[8] Artist name



- To turn off the displayed information screen, press **ⓈDISPLAY** again.
- Press **ⓈENTER** repeatedly to hold and release the current HD Radio information. While this unit is holding the information, the "HOLD" appears in the OSD.
- You can set the time for which the HD Radio information is displayed in the video monitor by using the "OSD-SOURCE" parameter in "Manual Setup" (see page 98).
- The current HD Radio reception level appears on the top of the HD Radio information screen. For the best reception, adjust the orientation of the antenna so that "■■■" or "■■■■" is displayed here.
- When this unit is tuned into an analog FM/AM radio station, "TUNER Information" appears as follows.

	TUNER Information	ANT:■■■
	A1:FM 98.7MHz	PRESET
	ANALOG	
	♫:---	
	A:---	
	♪:---	
	🎵:---	

XM Satellite Radio tuning

XM Radio offers an extraordinary variety of commercial-free music, plus the best in premier sports, news, talk radio, stand-up comedy, children's and entertainment programming. XM is broadcast in superior digital audio quality from coast to coast. From rock to reggae, from classical to hip hop, XM has something for every music fan.

XM Satellite Radio online information

For U.S. customers: <http://www.xmradio.com/>

For Canadian customers: <http://www.xmradio.ca/>

Note

The XM Satellite Radio service is only available in the 48 contiguous United States (not available in Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

XM READY legal disclaimer

XM monthly service subscription sold separately. XM Mini-Tuner and Home Dock required (each sold separately) to receive XM service. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the XM Satellite Radio System. Installation costs and other fees and taxes, including a one-time activation fee may apply. All fees and programming subject to change. Channels with frequent explicit language are indicated with an XL. Channel blocking is available for XM radio receivers by calling 1-800-XM-RADIO (US residents) and 1-877-GET-XMSR (Canadian residents). For a full listing of the XM commercial-free channels and advertising-supported channels, visit lineup.xmradio.com (US residents) or xmradio.ca (Canadian residents). Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at www.xmradio.com (US residents) and www.xmradio.ca (Canadian residents). Only available in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada. ©2008 XM Satellite Radio Inc. All rights reserved. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

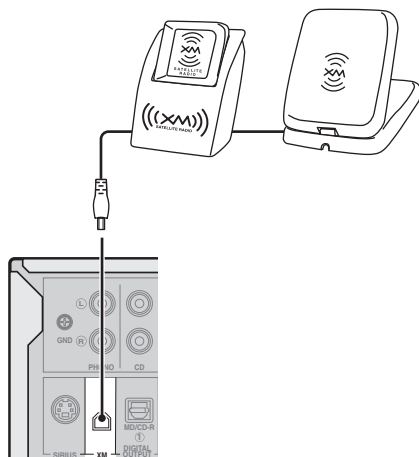
■ Enjoying XM HD Surround content

This unit is equipped with the Neural Surround decoder that plays back the XM HD surround sound content of the XM Satellite Radio broadcasts in multi-channels, resulting in a full surround sound experience (see page 80).

Connecting the XM Mini-Tuner Dock

Connect the XM Mini-Tuner and the XM Dock (sold separately) to the XM jack on the rear panel of this unit. For details, see the operating instructions provided with the XM Mini-Tuner Dock.

XM Mini-Tuner and XM Dock
(sold separately)



To ensure optimal reception of the XM Satellite Radio signals, the XM Mini-Tuner Dock must be placed at or near a southerly facing window with no obstacles in the path to the sky. You can mount it indoors or outdoors. Use the "ANTENNA INFO" information in the front panel or "XM Information" screen in the video monitor (see page 63) to check the antenna reception level and adjust the orientation of the antenna.

Note

If "CHECK ANTENNA" or "CHECK XM TUNER" appears in the front panel display, the connection and setting of the antenna, Home Dock, or XM Mini-Tuner may not correct (see page 117).

Activating XM Satellite Radio

Once you have installed the XM Mini-Tuner Dock, inserted the XM Mini-Tuner, connected the XM Dock to your XM Ready® home audio system, and installed the antenna, you are ready to subscribe and begin receiving XM programming. There are three places to find your eight character XM Radio ID: On the XM Mini-Tuner, on the XM Mini-Tuner package, and on XM Channel 0. Record the XM Radio ID in the following eight squares for reference.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Note

The XM Radio ID does not use the letters “I”, “O”, “S” or “F”. Activate your XM Satellite Radio service in the U.S. online at <http://activate.xmradio.com/> or call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346). Activate your XM Satellite Radio service in Canada online at <https://activate.xmradio.ca/> or call 1-877-GET-XMSR (1-877-438-9677). You will need a major credit card. XM will send a signal from the satellites to activate the full channel lineup. Activation normally takes 10 to 15 minutes, but during peak busy periods you may need to keep your XM Ready home audio system on for up to an hour. When you can access the full lineup on your XM Ready home audio system you are done.

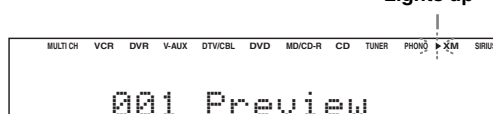
Basic XM Satellite Radio operations

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓈSOURCE**.

1 Rotate the **ⓈINPUT** selector (or press **ⓈXM**) to select “XM” as the input source.

The cursor on the left of the XM indicator lights up in the front panel display and the XM Satellite Radio information (such as channel number, channel name, category, artist name, or song title) for the currently selected channel appears in the front panel display.

Lights up



When you select “XM” as the input source, this unit automatically recalls the previously selected channel.

Notes

- The XM Satellite Radio signals cannot be output at the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.
- If a status message or an error message appears in the front panel display or in the OSD, see the “XM Satellite Radio” section in “Troubleshooting” on page 113 for appropriate remedies.

2 Search for a channel by using one of the XM Satellite Radio search modes.

- To select a channel from the all channel list, see “All Channel Search mode” on page 61.
- To select a channel by category, see “Category Search mode” on page 61.
- To select a channel from the preset channels, see “Preset Search mode” on page 61.
- To select the desired channel directly by entering the channel number, see “Direct number access mode” on page 61.



- You can use the Neural Surround decoder to enjoy the XM HD surround sound content of the XM Satellite Radio broadcasts in multi-channels (see page 80).
- You can set the XM Satellite Radio preset channels (see page 62).
- You can display the XM Satellite Radio information in the front panel display or in the OSD (see page 63).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④XM**.

■ All Channel Search mode

- 1 Press **⑥SEARCH MODE** (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “ALL CH SEARCH”.
- 2 Press **⑥PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to search for a channel within all channels.



- You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding **⑥PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$).
- To display the XM Radio ID number displayed in the front panel display, select channel “0”.

■ Category Search mode

- 1 Press **⑥SEARCH MODE** (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “CAT SEARCH”.
- 2 Press **⑩CATEGORY** (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly to change the channel category.
- 3 Press **⑥PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to search for a channel within the selected channel category.



You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding **⑥PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$).

■ Preset Search mode

Prior to selecting a preset channel in the Preset Search mode, you must preset XM Satellite Radio channels. For details, see “Setting the XM Satellite Radio preset channels” on page 62.



The initial factory setting of all preset channels (A1 to E8) is “001 Preview”.

- 1 Press **⑥SEARCH MODE** (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “PRESET SEARCH”.
- 2 Press **⑩CATEGORY** (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly to change the preset channel group (A to E).

- 3 Press **⑥PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to change the preset channel number (1 to 8).



You can also select the preset channel number directly by pressing the numeric buttons (1 to 8) (**⑥**).

■ Direct number access mode

- 1 Press **⑩SRCH MODE** on the remote control repeatedly to select “ALL CH SEARCH” or “CAT SEARCH”.
- 2 Press the numeric buttons (**⑥**) to enter the desired three-digit channel number.
For example, to enter the number 123, press the numeric buttons (**⑥**) as shown below.



- To enter a one-digit or two-digit channel number, press the numeric buttons (**⑥**) on the remote control and then press **⑩ENT** to confirm the input number.
- Instead of pressing **⑩ENT** to tune into the channel immediately, you can wait a few seconds until this unit confirms the entered channel number.
- Pressing a button other than the numeric buttons (**⑥**) or **⑩ENT** cancels the Direct Number Access mode procedure.

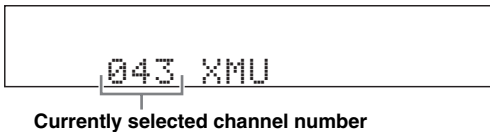
Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑥SOURCE** and then press **④XM**.

Setting the XM Satellite Radio preset channels

You can use this feature to store up to 40 XM Satellite Radio channels (A1 to E8: 8 preset channel numbers in each of the 5 preset channel groups). You can then recall any preset channel easily by selecting the preset channel group and number as described in “Preset Search mode” on page 61.

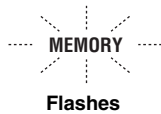
1 Search for a channel you want to set as a preset channel by using one of the XM Satellite Radio search modes.

See “Basic XM Satellite Radio operations” on page 60 for details.



2 Press **⑤MEMORY** (or **⑨MEMORY**).

The MEMORY indicator flashes in the front panel display for approximately 30 seconds.

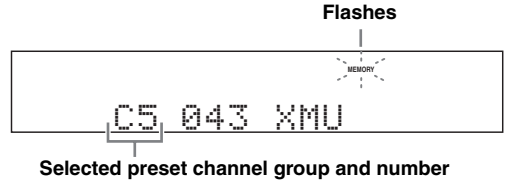


Note

You must proceed to and carry out steps 3 through 4 while the MEMORY indicator is flashing in the front panel display.

3 Press **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH** **</>** (or **⑧PRESET/CH** **Δ/∇**) repeatedly to select a preset channel group and number (A1 to E8) while the MEMORY indicator is flashing.

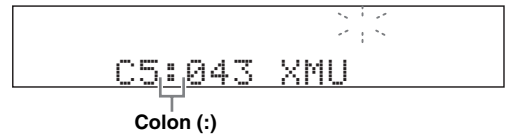
The preset channel number appears in the front panel display.



You can select the preset station group (A to E) by pressing **⑤A/B/C/D/E** (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** **</>**) repeatedly.

4 Press **⑤MEMORY** (or **⑨MEMORY**) to set the selected XM Satellite Radio channel as a preset channel while the MEMORY indicator is flashing.

A colon (:) appears next to the preset channel number for confirmation, and the MEMORY indicator turns off in the front panel display.



Note

Once you set a new preset channel, the one previously stored in the same preset channel group and number is cleared.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④XM**.

Displaying the XM Satellite Radio information

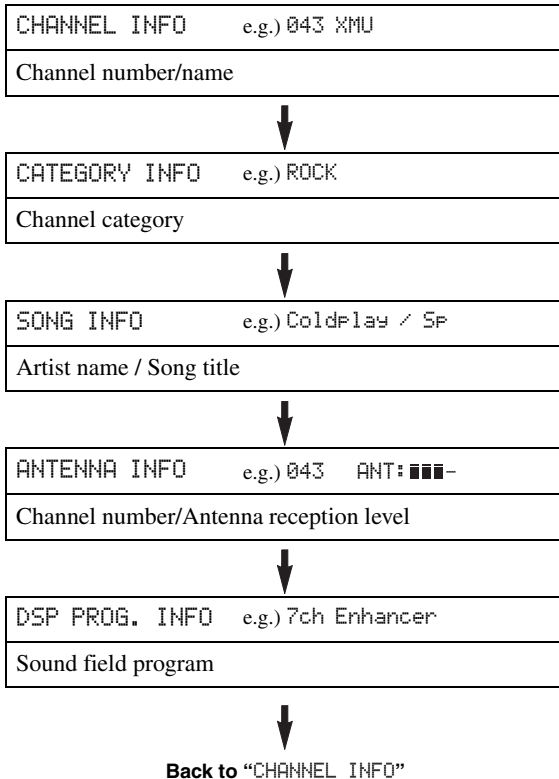
You can display the XM Satellite Radio information (such as channel number, channel name, category, artist name, or song title) for the currently selected channel in the front panel display or in the OSD.

Note

If a status message or an error message appears in the front panel display or in the OSD, see the “XM Satellite Radio” section in “Troubleshooting” on page 113 for appropriate remedies.

■ Displaying the XM Satellite Radio information in the front panel display

Press **③INFO** (or **⑩INFO**) repeatedly to toggle between the following XM Satellite Radio information display modes.

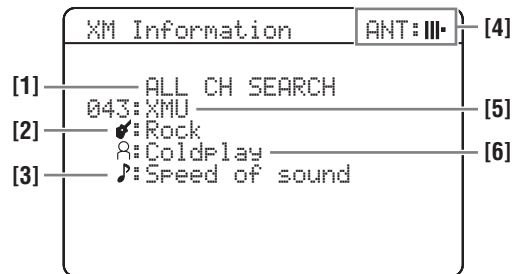


- The front panel display can indicate up to 14 alphanumeric characters at once. You can set whether to display the XM Satellite Radio information in the front panel display in a continuous manner or by 14 alphanumeric characters at once by using the “FL SCROLL” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- If the XM Satellite Radio information contains a character that cannot be recognized by this unit, the character will be displayed with a space.
- To hold the current XM Radio information, press **③ENTER** on the remote control while it is being displayed. The HOLD indicator flashes in the front panel display while you are holding the XM information. Press **③ENTER** again to release the held information.
- When the antenna of the XM Mini-Tuner Dock cannot receive the signals, “NO SIGNAL” appears in the front panel display.

■ Displaying the XM Satellite Radio information in the OSD

Press **②DISPLAY**.

The following screen is displayed in the OSD.



[1] Search mode (see page 60)

[2] Channel category

[3] Song title

[4] Antenna reception level

[5] Channel number/name

[6] Artist name



- To turn off the OSD, press **②DISPLAY** again.
- XM status messages also appear in the OSD.
- You can select the amount of time the XM Satellite Radio information is displayed in the OSD by using the “OSD-SOURCE” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- To hold the XM Satellite Radio information, press **③ENTER** on the remote control while it is being displayed in the OSD. “HOLD” appears in the screen while you are holding the XM information. Press **③ENTER** again or change the XM Satellite Radio channel to release the held information.
- The current XM Satellite Radio reception level appears on the top of the XM Satellite Radio information screen. For the best reception, adjust the orientation of the antenna of Home Dock so that “■■■-” or “■■■■” is displayed here. “....” is displayed if the antenna cannot receive the signals correctly. In this case, adjust the orientation of the antenna (see page 59).

SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuning

SIRIUS Satellite Radio provides over 130 channels of exclusive entertainment and 100% commercial-free music. Only SIRIUS has more than 65 original music channels, from today's hits to R&B, oldies, and classical masterpieces. From authentic country and real bluegrass to cool jazz, hot latin, reggae, rock and many more. Best of all, it's all 100% commercial-free.

SIRIUS also has more than 55 channels of world-class sports, news and entertainment. Included as part of your subscription, you get up to 16 NFL games a week, up to 40 NBA games a week and up to 40 NHL games a week. (Games are broadcast during their respective seasons.)

Coupled with great sports news from ESPN, the SIRIUS sports offering is unrivaled. And don't forget a host of other great news and entertainment, like NPR, CNBC, Fox News, Radio Disney and E! Entertainment Radio. For more information, visit <http://www.sirius.com/>.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio legal disclaimer

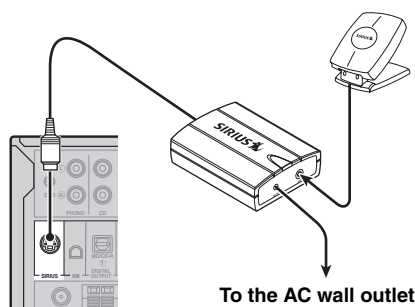
SIRIUS is available in the U.S.A. for subscribers with addresses in the continental U.S.A. and is available in Canada for subscribers with a Canadian address. To Get SIRIUS Satellite Radio a subscription and compatible tuner and antenna are required and sold separately. Visit sirius.com for the most complete and up-to-date channel lineup and information.

"SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo and related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.

Connecting the SiriusConnect™ tuner

Connect the SiriusConnect tuner (sold separately) to the SIRIUS jack on the rear panel of this unit. For details, see the operating instructions provided with the SiriusConnect tuner.

SiriusConnect™ tuner and the antenna
(sold separately)



- To ensure optimal reception of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals, the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner must be placed at or near a window with no obstacles in the path to the sky. The orientation of the antenna for the best reception differs depending on the area. Refer to the instruction manuals supplied with the SiriusConnect tuner for the installation of the antenna. You can mount it indoors or outdoors.
- Use the "ANTENNA INFO" information in the front panel or "SIRIUS Information" screen in the video monitor (see page 69) to check the antenna reception level and adjust the orientation of the antenna.
- You need to connect the SiriusConnect tuner to the AC wall outlet.

Notes

- If "CHECK SR TUNER" or "ANTENNA ERROR" appears in the front panel display, the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner or antenna is incorrect. In such cases, check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and the antenna (see page 118).
- If "NOT SUPPORTED" appears in the front panel display, this unit does not support the connected SiriusConnect tuner.

Activating SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ subscription

Before using the SIRIUS Satellite Radio feature, you need to activate your SIRIUS Satellite Radio subscription. To activate the subscription you need the Sirius ID which is uniquely assigned to the SiriusConnect tuner. Sirius ID is 12-digit number and it appears on the package of the SiriusConnect tuner, on the label of the SiriusConnect tuner, and when you tune into the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel "0" (see below).

■ Displaying the Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner

1 Set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓂSOURCE** and then press **⓪SIRIUS**.

2 Press **⓪0** and then **ⓂENT** to display the Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner.

"000 Sirius IDxxxxxxxxxx" ("xxxxxxxxxx" indicates the 12-digit Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner) appears in the front panel display.



To scroll the message again, press **ⓂINFO** (or **ⓂINFO**).

Write the Sirius ID below.

ID: _____

3 Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to activate your subscription.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio online information

Contact for activation

URL: <https://activate.siriusradio.com/>

Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)



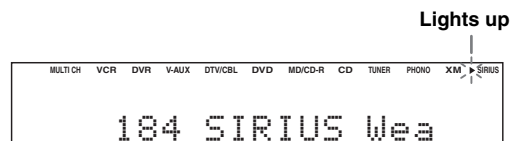
Status messages appear in the front panel display or video monitor during the activation. For details, see "SIRIUS Satellite Radio" section on page 118. Once the activation is finished, "SUB UPDATED" appears.

Basic SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ operations

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓂSOURCE**.

1 Rotate the **ⓂINPUT** selector (or press **⓪SIRIUS**) to select "SIRIUS" as the input source.

The cursor on the left of the SIRIUS indicator lights up in the front panel display and the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information (such as channel number, channel name, category, artist name, or song title) for the currently selected channel appears in the front panel display.



When you select "SIRIUS" as the input source, this unit automatically recalls the previously selected channel.

Notes

- The SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals cannot be output at the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.
- When you have not activated your subscription yet, you can only select "184" or "000".
- If a status message or an error message appears in the front panel display or in the OSD, see the "SIRIUS Satellite Radio" section in "Troubleshooting" on page 118 for appropriate remedies.

2 Search for a channel by using one of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio search modes.

- To select a channel from the all channel list, see "All Channel Search mode" on page 66.
- To select a channel by category, see "Category Search mode" on page 66.
- To select a channel from the preset channels, see "Preset Search mode" on page 66.
- To select the desired channel directly by entering the channel number, see "Direct number access mode" on page 66.



- If you tune into a channel that you do not subscribe, "CALL 888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" appears in the front panel display. To scroll the message again, press **ⓂINFO** (or **ⓂINFO**).
- You can set the SIRIUS Satellite Radio preset channels (see page 67).
- You can display the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information in the front panel display or in the video monitor (see page 69).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④SIRIUS**.

■ All Channel Search mode

1 Press **⑤SEARCH MODE (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “ALL CH SEARCH”.**

2 Press **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to search for a channel within all channels.**



- You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$).
- You can skip channels to the previous or next category by pressing **⑤CATEGORY** (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$).

■ Category Search mode

1 Press **⑤SEARCH MODE (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “CAT SEARCH”.**

2 Press **⑤CATEGORY (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly to change the channel category.**

3 Press **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to search for a channel within the selected channel category.**



You can search for a channel quickly by pressing and holding **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$).

Note

This unit skips the channels when this unit is All Channel Search mode or Category Search mode in the following cases (it is not malfunction of this unit):

- the channel is locked (see page 67).
- the channel is out of service.
- you do not subscribe to the channel.

■ Preset Search mode

Prior to selecting a preset channel in the Preset Search mode, you must preset SIRIUS channels. For details, see “Setting the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ preset channels” on page 67.

1 Press **⑤SEARCH MODE (or **⑩SRCH MODE**) repeatedly to select “PRESET SEARCH”.**

2 Press **⑤CATEGORY (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly to change the preset channel group (A to E).**

3 Press **⑤PRESET/TUNING/CH $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to change the preset channel number (1 to 8).**



You can also select the preset channel number directly by pressing the numeric buttons (1 to 8) (**⑥**).

■ Direct number access mode

1 Press **⑩SRCH MODE on the remote control repeatedly to select “ALL CH SEARCH” or “CAT SEARCH”.**

2 Press the numeric buttons (⑥**) to enter the desired three-digit channel number.**

For example, to enter the number 123, press the numeric buttons (**⑥**) as shown below.



- To display the Sirius ID number displayed in the front panel display, select channel “0”.
- To enter a one-digit or two-digit channel number, press the numeric buttons (**⑥**) on the remote control and then press **⑩ENT** to confirm the input number.
- Instead of pressing **⑩ENT** to tune into the channel immediately, you can wait a few seconds until this unit confirms the entered channel number.
- If no button is pressed within a few seconds after you enter a one-digit or two-digit number, this unit automatically confirms the entered channel number.
- If the selected channel is locked, “PIN:___” appears in the front panel display. Enter the four-digit Parental Lock code number by using the numeric buttons (**⑥**) or press **⑩ENT** to cancel (see page 67).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④SIRIUS**.

Setting the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ preset channels

You can use this feature to store up to 40 SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels (A1 to E8: 8 preset channel numbers in each of the 5 preset channel groups). You can then recall any preset channel easily by selecting the preset channel group and number as described in “Preset Search mode” on page 66.

- 1 Search for a channel you want to set as a preset channel by using one of the SIRIUS Satellite Radio search modes.

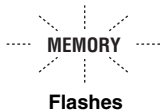
See “Basic SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ operations” on page 65 for details.



Currently selected channel number

- 2 Press **ⓕMEMORY** (or **⑨MEMORY**).

The MEMORY indicator flashes in the front panel display for approximately 30 seconds.

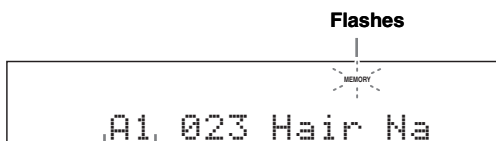


Flashes

Note

You must proceed to and carry out steps 3 through 4 while the MEMORY indicator is flashing in the front panel display.

- 3 Press **ⓈPRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$) repeatedly to select a preset channel group and number (A1 to E8) while the MEMORY indicator is flashing. The preset channel number appears in the front panel display.



Currently selected preset channel group and number



You can select the preset station group (A to E) by pressing **ⓈA/B/C/D/E** (or **⑧A-E/CAT.** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$) repeatedly.

- 4 Press **ⓕMEMORY** (or **⑨MEMORY**) to set the selected SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel as a preset channel while the MEMORY indicator is flashing.

A colon (:) appears next to the preset channel number for confirmation, and the MEMORY indicator turns off in the front panel display.



Colon (:)

Note

Once you set a new preset channel, the one previously stored in the same preset channel group and number is cleared.

Setting the Parental Lock

You can use the Parental Lock feature to limit the access to the desired SIRIUS Satellite channels. This unit automatically skips the locked channels when this unit is in the All Channel Search mode or Category Search mode and you search a channel by pressing **ⓈPRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **⑧PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$).

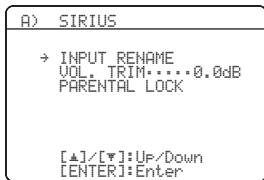
■ Setting the code number and the locked channels

Use this feature to set the Parental Lock code number (PIN) and select the channels to be locked.

- 1 Set the operation mode selector to **⑩AMP** on the remote control and then press **ⓈSET MENU** to display.
- 2 Press **⑧▽** to select “MANUAL SETUP” and then press **⑧ENTER**.
- 3 Press **⑧▽** repeatedly to select “INPUT MENU” and then press **⑧ENTER**.

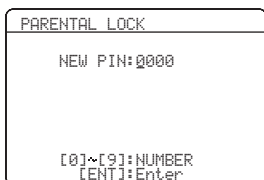
- 4 Press $\textcircled{8}$ / ∇ repeatedly to select “SIRIUS” and then press $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.**

The following menu screen appears.



- 5 Press $\textcircled{8}$ ∇ repeatedly to select “PARENTAL LOCK” and then press $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.**

“NEW PIN:0000” appears.



Note

If a SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to this unit, “Not Available” appears.



If the Parental Lock code number is already set, “PIN:___” appears instead of “NEW PIN:0000”. Refer to step 8 and then proceed the operations.

- 6 Enter the desired 4-digit code number by using the numeric buttons ($\textcircled{6}$).**



Press $\textcircled{9}$ RETURN to return the previous menu level without setting the code number.

- 7 Press $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER to confirm the code number.**

“OK” and then the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel list appears. Refer to the step 9 and then proceed the operations.

- 8 Enter the 4-digit code number you set at step 6 above to unlock the protection.**

When the code number is correct, “OK” and then the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel list appears.

- 9 Press $\textcircled{8}$ $\triangleleft$ / $\triangleright$ repeatedly to select the desired channel category and then press $\textcircled{8}$ $\triangleleft$ / ∇ repeatedly to select the channel you want to lock.**

Note

In the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel list screen, this unit outputs the sound of the selected channel even if the channel is locked. Only the first eight characters of each channel name are displayed in the list.

- 10 Press $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER to lock the selected channel.**

Check mark appears before the locked channel.



When you select the locked channel and press $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER, this unit unlocks the selected channel.

- 11 Repeat steps 9 and 10 to lock the channels you want.**

- 12 Press $\textcircled{9}$ RETURN to exit from the “PARENTAL LOCK” screen.**

- 13 Press $\textcircled{19}$ SET MENU to exit from the setup menu.**

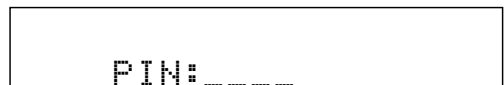
This unit is tuned into the last channel you select in the “PARENTAL LOCK” screen. If the channel is locked, this unit is tuned into “184 SIRIUS Weather & Emergency” or “000 Sirius IDxxxxxxxxxx” (“xxxxxxxxxx” indicates the Sirius ID of your SiriusConnect tuner).



- If you forget or want to change the Parental lock code number, use “SR PIN” in “ADVANCED SETUP” to reset the Parental Lock code number.
- When you select “ALL” in “INIT” (see page 112), all locked channels are unlocked.

■ Tuning into the locked channels

You can tune into the locked channels by the Direct number access mode or preset tuning mode. When you tune into the locked channel, following message appears in the front panel display. Enter the code number you set for the Parental Lock feature by using the numeric buttons ($\textcircled{6}$) or press $\textcircled{18}$ ENT to cancel the tuning.



Notes

- If the entered code number is incorrect, “Wrong” appears in the front panel display and this unit is tuned into the previously selected channel.
- If a channel is unlocked, you can also select the channel in Zone2.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑩SOURCE** and then press **④SIRIUS**.

Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ information

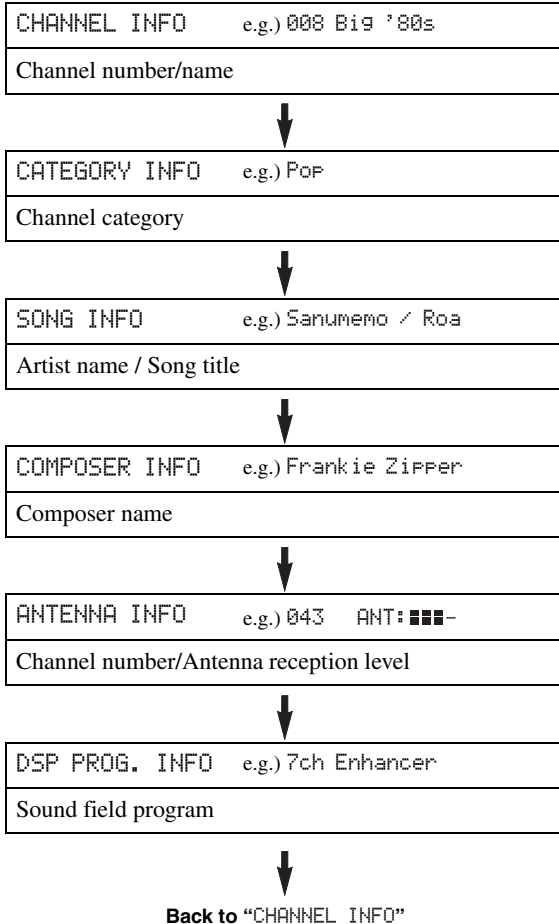
You can display the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information (such as channel number, channel name, category, artist name, composer name, or song title) for the currently selected channel in the front panel display or in the OSD.

Note

If a status message or an error message appears in the front panel display or in the OSD, see the “SIRIUS Satellite Radio” section in “Troubleshooting” on page 118 for appropriate remedies.

■ Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information in the front panel display

Press **ⓐINFO** (or **⑩INFO**) repeatedly to toggle between the following SIRIUS Satellite Radio information display modes.

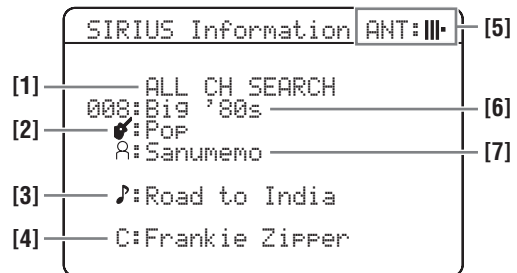


- The front panel display can indicate up to 14 alphanumeric characters at once. You can set whether to display the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information in the front panel display in a continuous manner or by 14 alphanumeric characters at once by using the “FL SCROLL” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- If the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information contains a character that cannot be recognized by this unit, the character will be displayed with a space.
- To hold the current SIRIUS Satellite Radio information, press **ⓐENTER** on the remote control while it is being displayed. Press **ⓐENTER** again to release the held information.
- When the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner cannot receive the signals, “ACQUIRING” appears in the front panel display.
- When an information is unavailable, “----” appears.

■ Displaying the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information in the OSD

Press **ⓐDISPLAY** on the remote control.

The following screen is displayed in the OSD.



[1] Search mode (see page 65)

[2] Channel category

[3] Song title

[4] Composer name

[5] Antenna reception level

[6] Channel number/name

[7] Artist name



- To turn off the OSD, press **ⓐDISPLAY** again.
- SIRIUS status messages also appear in the OSD.
- You can select the amount of time the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information is displayed in the OSD by using the “OSD-SOURCE” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- To hold the SIRIUS Satellite Radio information, press **ⓐENTER** on the remote control while it is being displayed in the OSD. While this unit is holding the information screen, “HOLD” appears in the OSD.
- The HOLD indicator flashes in the front panel display while you are holding the SIRIUS information. Press **ⓐENTER** again or change the SIRIUS Satellite Radio channel to release the held information.

Using iPod™

Once you have stationed your iPod in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit (see page 25), you can enjoy playback of your iPod using the supplied remote control. You can also use the Compressed Music Enhancer mode of this unit to improve the sound quality of the compression artifacts (such as the MP3 format) stored on your iPod (see page 50).

Notes

- Only iPod (Click and Wheel), iPod nano, and iPod mini are supported.
- Some features may not be compatible depending on the model or the software version of your iPod.



- For a complete list of status messages that appear in the front panel display and in the OSD, see the “iPod” section in “Troubleshooting” on page 119.
- Once the connection between your iPod and this unit is complete, “iPod connected” appears in the front panel display and the DOCK indicator lights up in the front panel display.
- Only the analog audio and video signals of your iPod are input at the DOCK terminal, and the analog audio signals can be output at the analog AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks for recording.
- Your iPod battery is automatically charged when your iPod is stationed in a Yamaha iPod universal dock connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit as long as this unit is turned on. You can also select whether this unit charges the battery of the stationed iPod or not when this unit is in the standby mode by selecting the “STANDBY CHARGE” parameter in “INPUT MENU” (see page 96). The DOCK indicator turns on while this unit charges the battery of the connected iPod when this unit is in the standby mode.

Controlling iPod™

You can control your iPod when “V-AUX” is selected as the input source. The operations of your iPod can be done with the aid of the OSD of this unit (menu browse mode) or without it (simple remote mode).

■ Remote control operation

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑮SOURCE** and then press **④V-AUX**.

Button	Function
⑧ ENTER	Subsequent menu
△	Menu up
▽	Menu down
◀	Previous menu
▶	Subsequent menu
⑩ ◀◀	Search backward (Press and hold)
▶▶	Search forward (Press and hold)
▶▶▶	Skip forward
◀◀◀	Skip backward
□	Stop
⏸	Pause (Menu browse mode) Play/Pause (Simple remote mode)
▶	Play (Menu browse mode) Play/Pause (Simple remote mode)
⑰ MENU	Previous menu
⑳ DISPLAY	Display

■ Controlling iPod in the simple remote mode

You can perform the basic operations of your iPod (play, stop, skip, etc.) using the supplied remote control without the aid of the OSD of this unit.



- You can view the photos or video clips stored on your iPod (some models only).
- Operations can be also done with the controls on your iPod.

■ Controlling iPod in the menu browse mode

You can perform the advanced operations of your iPod using the supplied remote control with the aid of the OSD of this unit. You can browse the songs stored on your iPod in the OSD. Further, you can change or adjust settings for your iPod to suit your personal preferences.



- The name of the song being played also appears in the front panel display according to the “FL SCROLL” parameter in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).
- You can select the amount of time the iPod menu and play information is displayed in the OSD by using the “OSD-SOURCE” in “OPTION MENU” (see page 98).

Notes

- Operations cannot be done with the controls on your iPod.
- There are some characters that cannot be displayed in the front panel display or in the OSD of this unit. Those characters are replaced with underscores “_”.
- The “Settings” parameters can be changed or adjusted only in the OSD. Press **ENTER** or **Δ/∇** repeatedly on the remote control to toggle between the “Settings” parameter settings.
- You cannot browse the photos or video clips stored on your iPod in the OSD. Use the simple remote mode to enjoy watching the photos or video clips stored on your iPod.

1 Set the operation mode selector to **SOURCE** and then press **DISPLAY** on the remote control.

The following display appears in the OSD.



2 Press **Δ/∇/◀/▶** to navigate the iPod menu and then press **ENTER** to begin playback of the selected song.

Choices: Playlists (playlists), Artists (artists), Albums (albums), Songs (songs), Genres (genres), Composers (composers), Settings (settings)

- Playlists > Songs
- Artists > Albums > Songs
- Albums > Songs
- Songs
- Genres > Artists > Albums > Songs
- Composers > Albums > Songs
- Settings > Shuffle, Repeat

Shuffle Shuffle

Use this feature to set this unit to play songs or albums in random order.

Choices: Off, Songs, Albums

- Select “Off” to deactivate this feature.
- Select “Songs” to set this unit to play songs in random order.
- Select “Albums” to set this unit to play albums in random order.



When “Shuffle” is set to a setting other than “Off”, “” appears in the top right corner while songs or albums are being shuffled.

Repeat Repeat

Use this feature to set this unit to repeat one song or a sequence of songs.

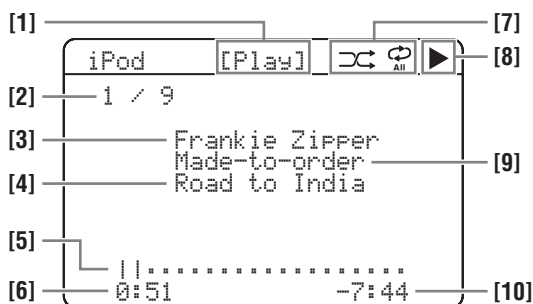
Choices: Off, One, All

- Select “Off” to deactivate this feature.
- Select “One” to set this unit to repeat one song.
- Select “All” to set this unit to repeat a sequence of songs.



When “Repeat” is set to a setting other than “Off”, “” or “” appears in the top right corner while one song or a sequence of songs are being repeated.

■ The function of the play information display



- [1] Playback status
- [2] Track number/total tracks
- [3] Artist name
- [4] Song title
- [5] Progress bar
- [6] Elapsed time
- [7] Shuffle and repeat icons
- [8] ▶ (playback), || (pausing), ⏭ (search forward) and ⏮ (search backward)
- [9] Name of the album
- [10] Remaining time

Using Bluetooth™ components

You can connect a Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) to the DOCK terminal of this unit and enjoy the music contents stored in your Bluetooth component (such as a portable music player) without wiring between this unit and the Bluetooth component. You need to perform “pairing” the connected Bluetooth adapter and your Bluetooth component in advance.

Pairing the Bluetooth™ adapter and your Bluetooth component

Pairing must be performed when using a Bluetooth component with the Bluetooth adapter connected to this unit for the first time or if the pairing data has been deleted. “Pairing” refers to the operation of registering a Bluetooth component for Bluetooth communications.



- You only need the pairing operation for the first time that you use the Bluetooth component with the Bluetooth adapter.
- Pairing requires operations on this unit and on the other component with which Bluetooth communications are to be established. If necessary, refer to the other component's operating instructions.

There are two pairing methods: pairing by using “START PAIRING” in “SET MENU” and quick pairing.

■ Pairing by using “SET MENU”

Use this feature to perform pairing with the video monitor. Select “START PAIRING” in “INPUT MENU”. See page 97 for details.

■ Quick pairing

To ensure security, a time limit of 8 minutes is set for the pairing operation. You are recommended to read and fully understand all the instructions before starting.

1 Rotate the  INPUT selector (or set the operation mode selector to  SOURCE and then press  V-AUX) to select “V-AUX” as the input source.

2 Turn on the Bluetooth component you want to pair with.

3 Press and hold  BAND (or  BAND) for 3 seconds to start pairing.

Once the Bluetooth adapter starts pairing, “Searching...” appears for a moment. While the Bluetooth adapter is in the pairing mode, DOCK indicator flashes in the front panel display.



To cancel the pairing, press  BAND (or  BAND) again.

Note

If the Bluetooth adapter is not connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit, “No BT adapter” appears in the front panel display.

4 Check that the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth adapter.

If the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth adapter, “YBA-10 YAMAHA” (example) appears in the Bluetooth device list.

5 Select the Bluetooth adapter in the Bluetooth device list and then enter the pass key “0000” on the Bluetooth component.

When the pairing procedure is successful, “Completed” appears in the front panel display.

Note

The Yamaha Bluetooth adapter can be paired with up to eight Bluetooth components. When pairing is conducted successfully with a ninth component and the pairing data is registered, the pairing data for the least recently used other component is cleared.

Playback of the Bluetooth™ component

1 Rotate the  INPUT selector (or set the operation mode selector to  SOURCE and then press  V-AUX) to select “V-AUX” as the input source.

2 Start playback of your Bluetooth component.
When the connected Bluetooth adapter detects the Bluetooth component, “BT connected” and the DOCK indicator appears in the front panel display.



- When you press  ENTER on the remote control, the connected Bluetooth adapter searches and connect to the last connected Bluetooth component. If the Bluetooth adapter cannot find the Bluetooth component, “Not found” appears in the front panel display.
- To disconnect the Bluetooth adapter from the Bluetooth component, press  RETURN.

Recording

Recording adjustments and other operations are performed from the recording components. Refer to the operating instructions for those components.

Caution

The DTS signal is a digital bitstream. Attempting to digitally record the DTS bitstream will result in noise being recorded. Therefore, if you want to use this unit to record sources encoded in DTS, the following considerations and adjustments need to be made. To play DTS-encoded DVDs and CDs (when using a digital audio connection) on your DTS-compatible player, follow its operating instructions to make a setting so that the analog signal will be output from the player.

Notes

- When this unit is set to the standby mode, you cannot record between other components connected to this unit.
- TONE CONTROL (see page 52) and VOLUME settings, the speaker level (see page 52) and the sound field programs (see page 48) do not affect recorded material.
- The source connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks of this unit cannot be recorded.
- The XM Satellite Radio and SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals cannot be output at the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.
- HD Radio signals can be output at the analog AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks and DIGITAL OUTPUT jack for recording.
- Digital signals input at the DIGITAL INPUT jacks are not output at the analog AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks for recording. Likewise, analog signals input at the AUDIO IN jacks are not output at the DIGITAL OUTPUT jack. Therefore, if your source component is connected to provide only digital or analog signals, you can only record digital or analog signals.
- A given input source is not output on the same AUDIO OUT (REC) channel.
- S-video and composite video signals pass independently through the video circuits of this unit. Therefore, when recording or dubbing video signals input from a video source component that provides only an S-video or a composite video signal, you can only record an S-video or a composite video signal on your VCR.
- The analog audio signals input at the DOCK terminal can be output at the analog AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks for recording.
- Check the copyright laws in your country to record from CDs, radio, etc. Recording of copyrighted material may infringe copyright laws.



Do a test recording before you start an actual recording.

If you play back a video source that uses scrambled or encoded signals to prevent it from being dubbed, the picture itself may be disturbed due to those signals.

1 Turn on all the connected components.

2 Rotate the **ⒶINPUT selector (or press one of the input selector buttons (**④**)) to select the source component you want to record from.**

3 Start playback on the selected source component or select a broadcast station.

4 Start recording on the recording component.

Advanced sound configurations

Changing sound field parameter settings

You can enjoy good quality sound with the initial factory settings. Although you do not have to change the initial factory settings, you can change some of the parameters to better suit the input source or your listening room.

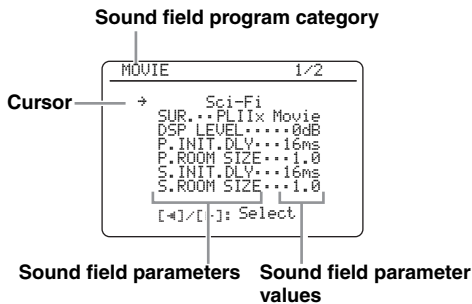
Note

You cannot change the sound field parameter values when “MEMORY GUARD” in “OPTION MENU” is set to “ON” (see page 100). If you want to change the sound field parameter values, set “MEMORY GUARD” to “OFF”.

1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.

2 Set the operation mode selector to **AMP and then press **PARAMETER** on the remote control.**

The following screen is shown in the OSD.



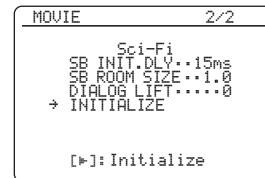
3 Press **PROG </> repeatedly to select the desired sound field program you want to adjust.**

4 Press **Δ / **∇** to select the desired sound field parameter and then **Δ** / **∇** to change the selected sound field parameter value.**

- Press **Δ** to increase the value.
- Press **∇** to decrease the value.



- For details about the function and control range of each sound field parameter, see page 76.
- When you set a sound field parameter to a value other than the initial factory settings, an asterisk mark (*) appears by the sound field parameter name in the OSD.
- Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary to change other sound field program parameter settings.
- The available sound field parameters for some of the sound field programs may be displayed on more than one page in the OSD. In this case, press **Δ** / **∇** to scroll through pages.
- To initialize the parameters of the selected sound field program, press **∇** repeatedly to select “INITIALIZE” and then press **Δ**. Once the confirmation screen appears in the OSD, press **Δ** to confirm or **∇** to cancel the initialization.



5 Press **PARAMETER to turn off the sound field parameter screen.**

■ Basic configuration of sound field programs

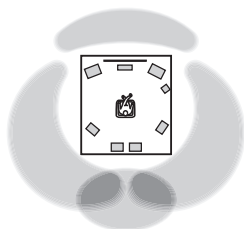
Each sound field program has some parameters defining the characteristics of the program. To customize the selected sound field program, adjust “DSP LEVEL” and/or “DIALG.LIFT” first, and then try other parameters.



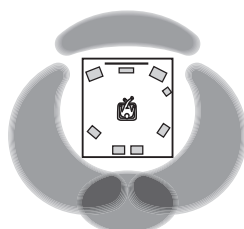
To change sound field parameter settings, see page 74 for details.

Adjusting the effect sound level of the sound field programs (DSP LEVEL)

Sound field programs add effect sounds (DSP effect sounds) to the original source sound to create sound field in the listening room. Use the “DSP LEVEL” parameter to adjust the level of the effect sounds.



The DSP effect sound level is low.



The DSP effect sound level is high.

Adjust “DSP LEVEL” in the following cases:

Increase the value of “DSP LEVEL”

- The effect sound of the selected sound field program is too weak.
- You cannot recognize any difference between the sound field programs.

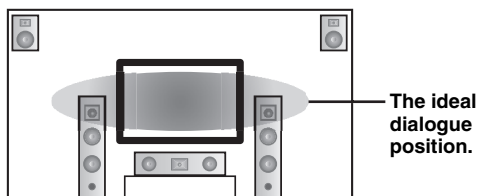
Decrease the value of “DSP LEVEL”

- The sound is vague.
- You feel that the additional sound effect is excessive.

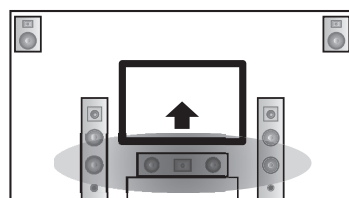
Control range: -6 dB to +3 dB

Adjusting the vertical dialogue position (DIALG.LIFT)

Use this feature to adjust the vertical position of the dialogues in movies. The ideal position of the dialogues is at the center of the video monitor screen.



If the dialogues are heard at the lower position of the video monitor screen, increase the value of “DIALG.LIFT”.



Move up to the ideal dialogue position.

Choices: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

“0” (initial setting) is the lowest position, and “5” is the highest position.

Notes

- “DIALG.LIFT” is only available only “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” is set to “PRESENCE” (see page 72).
- You cannot move the dialogue position down from the initial dialogue position.

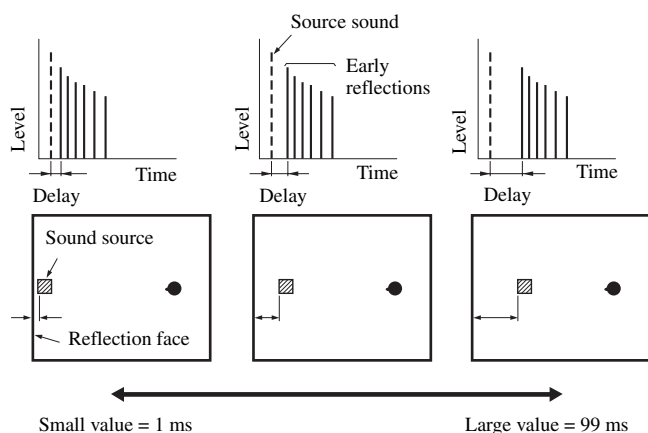
■ Sound field parameters for the advanced configurations

Use the following sound field parameters to customize sound field programs in detail.



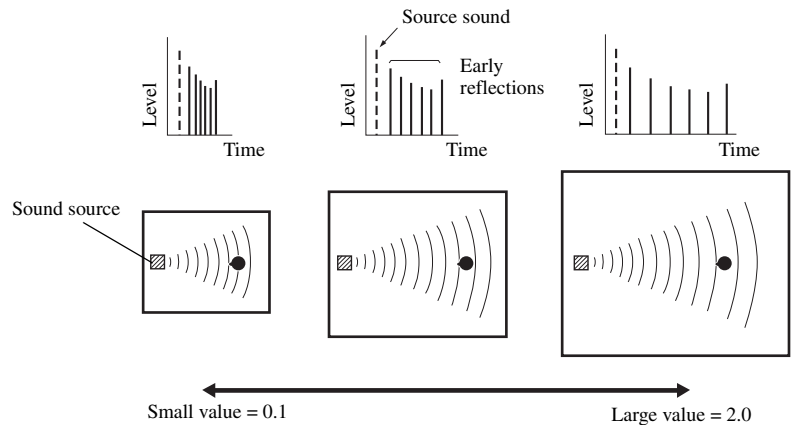
To change sound field parameter settings, see page 74 for details.

Sound field parameter	Features
INIT.DLY P.INIT.DLY S.INIT.DLY SB INI.DLY	Initial delay. Presence, surround, and surround back sound field initial delay. Changes the apparent distance from the source sound by adjusting the delay between the direct sound and the first reflection heard by the listener. The smaller the value, the closer the sound source seems to the reflection face. When you adjust the initial delay parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding room size parameters likewise. This adjustment is especially effective for the CINEMA DSP programs. Control range: 1 to 99 ms (INIT.DLY and P.INIT.DLY) 1 to 49 ms (S.INIT.DLY and SB INI.DLY)



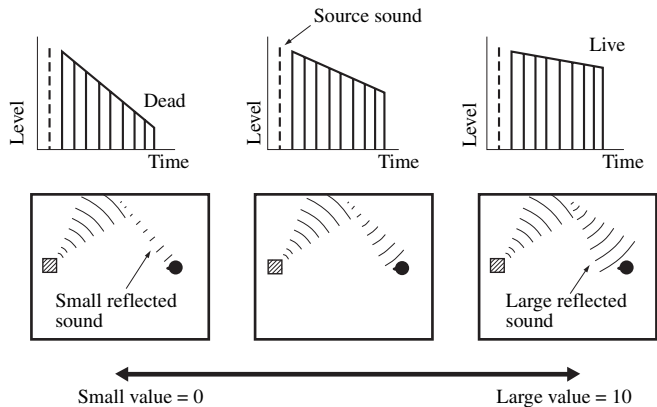
Sound field parameter	Features
ROOM SIZE P.ROOM SIZE S.ROOM SIZE SB ROOM SIZE	Room size. Presence, surround, and surround back room size. Adjusts the apparent size of the surround sound field. The larger the value, the larger the surround sound field becomes. As the sound is repeatedly reflected around a room, the larger the hall is, the longer the time between the original reflected sound and the subsequent reflections. By controlling the time between the reflected sounds, you can change the apparent size of the virtual venue. Changing this parameter from one to two doubles the apparent length of the room. ☼ When you adjust the room size parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding initial delay parameters likewise. This adjustment is especially effective for the CINEMA DSP programs.

Control range: 0.1 to 2.0

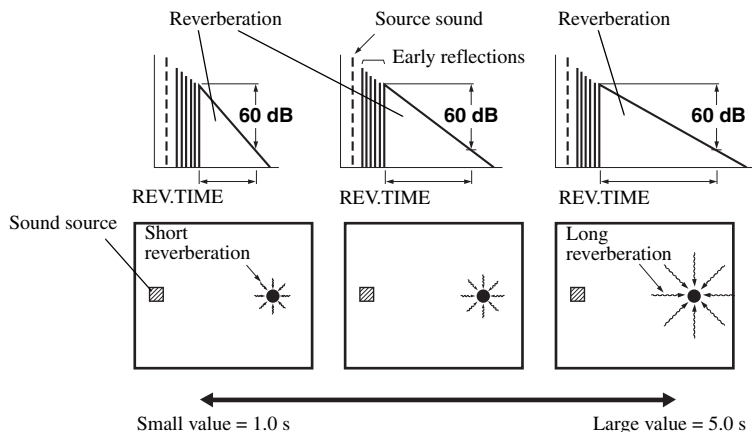


LIVENESS S.LIVENESS SB LIVENESS	Liveness. Surround and surround back sound field liveness. Adjusts the reflectivity of the virtual walls in the hall by changing the rate at which the early reflections decay. The early reflections of a sound source decay much faster in a room with acoustically absorbent wall surfaces than in one which has highly reflective surfaces. A room with acoustically absorbent surfaces is referred to as “dead”, while a room with highly reflective surfaces is referred to as “live”. This parameter lets you adjust the early reflection decay rate and thus the “liveness” of the room.
---------------------------------------	---

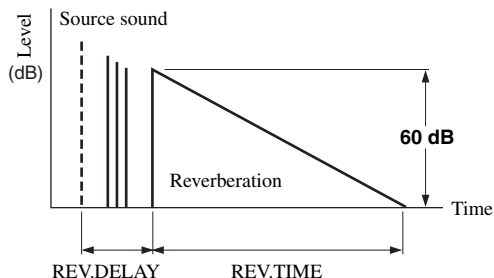
Control range: 0 to 10



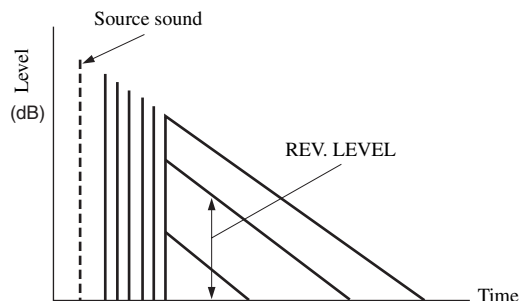
Sound field parameter	Features
REV.TIME	Reverberation time. Adjusts the amount of time taken for the dense, subsequent reverberation sound to decay by 60 dB at 1 kHz. This changes the apparent size of the acoustic environment over an extremely wide range. Set a longer reverberation time for “dead” sources and listening room environments, and a shorter time for “live” sources and listening room environments. Control range: 1.0 to 5.0 s



REV.DELAY	Reverberation delay. Adjusts the time difference between the beginning of the direct sound and the beginning of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the later the reverberation sound begins. A later reverberation sound makes you feel as if you are in a larger acoustic environment. Control range: 0 to 250 ms
-----------	--



REV.LEVEL	Reverberation level. Adjusts the volume of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the stronger the reverberation becomes. Control range: 0 to 100%
-----------	--



Sound field parameter	Features
DIRECT ("2ch Stereo" only)	2-channel stereo direct. Bypasses the decoders and the DSP processors of this unit for pure hi-fi stereo sound when playing 2-channel analog sources. Choices: AUTO, OFF  • Select "AUTO" to bypass the decoders, the DSP processors and the tone control circuitry only when "BASS" and "TREBLE" are set to 0 dB (see page 52). • Select "OFF" not to bypass the decoders, the DSP processors and the tone control circuitry when "BASS" and "TREBLE" are set to 0 dB. • When multi-channel signals (Dolby Digital and DTS) are input, they are downmixed to 2 channels and output from the front left and right speakers. • The low-frequency signals of the front left and right channels are redirected to the subwoofer in the following cases: – "LFE/BASS OUT" is set to "BOTH" (see page 87). – "FRONT SP" is set to "SMALL" (see page 88) and "LFE/BASS OUT" is set to "SWFR" (see page 87).
CT LEVEL SL LEVEL SR LEVEL SB LEVEL PL LEVEL PR LEVEL ("7ch Stereo" only)	7-channel stereo center, surround left, surround right, surround back, presence left and presence right levels. Adjusts the volume level of each channel in the 7-channel stereo mode. The available parameters differ depending on the setting of the speakers. Control range: 0 to 100%
EFFECT LEVEL ("Straight Enhancer" and "7ch Enhancer" only)	Straight and 7-channel Compressed Music Enhancer effect level. The high-frequency signals of some sources may be emphasized too much. In this case, set the effect level to "LOW". Choices: HIGH, LOW • Select "HIGH" for a high effect level. • Select "LOW" for a low effect level.

■ Selecting decoders used with sound field programs (SUR.)

Use this feature to select the desired decoder used with MOVIE sound field programs (except "Mono Movie"). See page 49 for details about MOVIE sound field program.

Available decoders

Decoder	Functions
PLIIx Movie PLII Movie	Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for movie sources. The Pro Logic IIx decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE" (see page 88).
Neo:6 Cinema	DTS processing for movie sources.

Selecting decoders

■ Selecting decoders for 2-channel sources (surround decode mode)

Use this feature to play back sources with selected decoders. You can play back 2-channel sources on multi-channels.

Set the operation mode selector to  AMP and then press  SUR. DECODE repeatedly on the remote control to select the desired surround decoder.

You can select from the following modes depending on the type of source you are playing and your personal preference.



You can change the decoder parameter settings (see page 81). Set the operation mode to  AMP and then press  PARAMETER to display the decoder parameters in the OSD. Press  /  repeatedly to select the desired decoder parameter and then press  /  repeatedly to change the value of the selected parameter.

■ Decoder descriptions (SUR.)

Decoder	Descriptions
Pro Logic	Dolby Pro Logic processing for any sources.
PLIIx Movie PLII Movie	Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for movie sources. The Pro Logic IIx decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE" (see page 88).
PLIIx Music PLII Music	Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for music sources. The Pro Logic IIx decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE" (see page 88).
PLIIx Game PLII Game	Dolby Pro Logic IIx (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for game sources. The Pro Logic IIx decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE" (see page 88).
Neo:6 Cinema	DTS processing for movie sources.
Neo:6 Music	DTS processing for music sources.
CSII Cinema (U.S.A. model only)	SRS Circle Surround II processing for movie sources.
CSII Music (U.S.A. model only)	SRS Circle Surround II processing for music sources.
Neural Sur. (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	Neural Surround processing for any sources. The Neural Surround decoder is compatible with PCM signals and analog 2-channel input sources. When Neural Surround-incompatible signals are being input while the Neural Surround decoder is selected, multi-channel sources are decoded straight into the appropriate channels without any additional effect processing and the Neural Surround-incompatible PCM signals are played back in stereo. The Neural Surround decoder is especially suitable for the XM HD Surround program of XM Satellite Radio.



When you select the surround decode mode for Dolby Digital, DTS or DTS 96/24 sources, this unit automatically selects "SURROUND DECODE Dolby Digital", "SURROUND DECODE DTS" or "SURROUND DECODE DTS 96/24" program.

Decoder parameter descriptions

Decoder parameter	Features
PANORAMA ("PLIIx Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music panorama. Sends stereo signals to the surround speakers as well as the front speakers for a wraparound effect. Choices: OFF, ON
DIMENSION ("PLIIx Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music dimension. Adjusts the sound field either towards the front or towards the rear. Control range: -3 (towards the rear) to +3 (towards the front) Initial setting: STD (standard)
CENTER WIDTH ("PLIIx Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music center width. Moves the center channel output completely towards the center speaker or towards the front left and right speakers. A larger value moves the center channel output towards the front left and right speakers. Control range: 0 (center channel sound is output only from the center speaker) to 7 (center channel sound is output only from the front left and right speakers) Initial setting: 3
C. IMAGE ("Neo:6 Music" only)	DTS Neo:6 Music center image. Adjusts the front left and right channel output relative to the center channel to make the center channel more or less dominant as necessary. Control range: 0.0 (center channel sound is output only from the front left and right speakers) to 1.0 (center channel sound output only from the center speaker) Initial setting: 0.3
FOCUS ("CSII Movie" and "CSII Music" only)	SRS CSII Movie and SRS CSII Music focus. Adjusts the clearness of a sound image by elevating the perception of the sound image to compensate for non-optimally placed speakers from a lower location. A larger value makes speakers sound as if they are positioned at ear level. Control range: 0 (lower location) to 8 (higher location)
TruBass ("CSII Movie" and "CSII Music" only)	SRS CSII Movie and CSII Music TruBass. Adjusts the lower register by producing the perception of improved low frequency performance. A larger value improves bass even without a subwoofer and provides deeper, richer bass in the presence of a subwoofer. Control range: 0 (standard low-frequency performance) to 8 (enhanced low-frequency performance)

Customizing this unit (MANUAL SETUP)

You can use the following parameters in “SET MENU” to adjust a variety of system settings and customize the way this unit operates. Change the initial settings (indicated in bold under each parameter) to reflect the needs of your listening environment.

■ Auto setup AUTO SETUP

Use this feature to automatically adjust speaker and system parameters (see page 32).

■ Manual setup MANUAL SETUP

Use this feature to manually adjust speaker and system parameters.

Basic menu 1 BASIC MENU

Menu	Parameter	Functions	Page
A>SPEAKER SET	EXTRA SP ASSIGN	Selects the function of the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP speaker terminal.	87
	LFE/BASS OUT	Selects the speakers that output the LFE (low-frequency effect) and the low-frequency signals.	87
	FRONT SP	Selects the size of the front speakers.	88
	CENTER SP	Selects the size of the center speaker.	88
	SUR. L/R SP	Selects the size and number of the surround speakers.	88
	SUR.B L/R SP	Selects the size and number of the surround back speakers.	88
	CROSS OVER	Selects the crossover frequency of all the speakers set to “SML” (or “SMALL”) in “SPEAKER SET” (see page 88).	89
	SUBWOOFER PHASE	Switches the phase of your subwoofer if bass sounds are lacking or unclear.	89
B>SP LEVEL	FR.L/FR.R/CNTR/ SUR.L/SUR.R/ SBL/SBR/SWFR/ PR.L/PR.R	Adjust the balance the speaker levels between the front left or surround left speakers and each speaker selected in “SPEAKER SET” (see page 87).	89
C>SP DISTANCE	UNIT	Selects the unit to adjust the speaker distance.	90
	FRONT L/FRONT R/ CENTER/SUR. L/ SUR. R/SBL/SBR/ SWFR/PRNS L/ PRNS R	Adjust the distance of each speaker and the delay applied to the respective channel.	90
D>TEST TONE	—	Turns the test tone output on or off for the “SPEAKER SET”, “SP LEVEL”, and “SP DISTANCE” settings.	90

Volume menu 2 VOLUME MENU

Parameter	Functions	Page
ADAPTIVE DRC	Selects whether this unit automatically adjusts the dynamic range in conjunction with the volume level or not.	91
ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL	Selects whether this unit adjusts the DSP effect level automatically in conjunction with the volume level or not.	91
MUTE TYPE	Adjusts how much the mute function reduces the output volume (see page 45).	91
MAX VOL.	Sets the maximum volume level of the main zone.	91
INIT. VOL.	Sets the volume level of the main zone when the power of this unit is turned on.	91

Sound menu 3 SOUND MENU

Menu	Parameter	Functions	Page
A)EQUALIZER	EQ TYPE SELECT	Selects the type of equalizer.	92
	GEQ	Adjusts the tonal quality of the speakers when you set "EQ TYPE SELECT" to "GEQ".	92
	TEST	Selects whether this unit outputs the test tone while making adjustments of "GEQ" or not.	92
B)LFE LEVEL	SPEAKER	Adjusts the speaker LFE level.	93
	HEADPHONE	Adjusts the headphone LFE level.	93
C)DYNAMIC RANGE	SPEAKER	Adjusts the amount of the dynamic range compression of the speakers.	93
	HEADPHONE	Adjusts the amount of the dynamic range compression of the headphones.	93
D)LIPSYNC	HDMI AUTO	Selects whether this unit activates the automatic audio and video synchronization function (automatic lip sync) or not.	94
	AUTO	Makes fine adjustments of the audio delay when the automatic audio and video synchronization function is active.	94
	MANUAL	Adjustment the audio delay manually when the connected video monitor is not compatible with the automatic audio and video synchronization function or "HDMI AUTO" is set to "OFF".	94
E)EXTD SUR.	—	Use this feature to enjoy 6.1/7.1-channel playback for multi-channel sources using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx, Dolby Digital EX, or DTS-ES decoders by using the connected surround back speakers.	94

Input menu 4 INPUT MENU

Note

Some parameters described below may not be available for all input sources and some parameters are only available for specific input sources.

Parameter	Functions	Page
I/O ASSIGNMENT	Assigns the input/output jacks according to the component to be used if the initial settings of this unit do not correspond to your needs.	95
INPUT RENAME	Changes the name of the input source that appears in the OSD and in the front panel display.	96
VOL. TRIM	Adjusts the level of the signal input at each jack.	96
DECODER MODE	Switches the decoder activation mode. You can designate the reassigned digital input jacks for DTS signals.	96
STANDBY CHARGE	Selects whether this unit charges the battery of the stationed iPod or not when this unit is in the standby mode (see page 29).	96
PARENTAL LOCK (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	Sets the SIRIUS Parental Lock code number and the channel lock configuration (see page 67)	96
START PAIRING	Pair the connected Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) with a Bluetooth component (see page 72).	97
BGV	Selects the video source played back in the background of the sources input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks.	97
INPUT CH	Selects the number of channels input from an external decoder.	97
FRONT	Selects the analog jacks at which the front channel signals from an external decoder are input when you set "INPUT CH" to "8CH".	97

Option menu 5 OPTION MENU

Menu	Parameter	Functions	Page
A>DISPLAY SET	DIMMER	Adjusts the brightness of the front panel display.	98
	OSD SHIFT	Adjusts the vertical position of the OSD.	98
	OSD-SOURCE	Sets the amount of time to display the HD Radio information (U.S.A. model only), SIRIUS Satellite Radio information, XM Satellite Radio information, or iPod menu in the video monitor after you perform a certain operation.	98
	OSD-AMP	Sets the amount of time to display the status information screen after you perform a certain operation.	98
	FL SCROLL	Selects the mode to display the information of the HD Radio information (U.S.A. model only), SIRIUS Satellite Radio information, XM Satellite Radio information, or iPod menu in the front panel display.	98
B>VIDEO SET	VIDEO CONV.	Selects whether to convert the video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO, and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks.	98
	HDMI RES.	Selects whether this unit activates the HDMI up-conversion of the analog video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO, and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks so that the up-scaled video signals are output at the HDMI OUT jack.	99
	HDMI ASPECT	Adjusts the aspect ratio for analog video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack.	99

Menu	Parameter	Functions	Page
C>MEMORY GUARD	—	Prevents accidental changes to sound field program parameter values and other system settings.	100
D>INIT. CONFIG	AUDIO SELECT	Designates the default audio input jack select setting for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.	100
	DECODER MODE	Designates the default decoder mode for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.	100
	EXTD SUR.	Designates the extended decoder mode for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.	100
E>HDMI SET	S.AUDIO	Selects whether to play back HDMI audio signals on this unit or on another HDMI component connected to the HDMI OUT jack.	101
F>ZONE2 SET	MAX VOL.	Adjusts the maximum volume level in Zone 2.	101
	INIT. VOL.	Sets the volume level of Zone 2 when you turn on the power of this unit.	101

■ Signal information SIGNAL INFO

Use this feature to check audio and video signal information (see page 46).

Using SET MENU

Use the remote control to access and adjust each parameter.

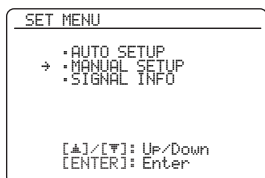


- You can change the “SET MENU” parameters while this unit is reproducing sound.
- If you press **Ⓢ**PARAMETER during the “SET MENU” operation, the “SET MENU” operation is canceled.
- Press **Ⓡ**RETURN to return to the previous menu level.

1 Set the operation mode selector to **ⓐ**AMP and then press **Ⓢ**SET MENU to enter “SET MENU”.

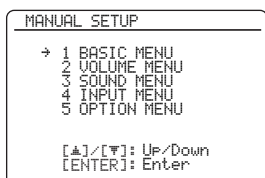
The top “SET MENU” display appears in the OSD.

2 Press **Ⓢ**△ / ▽ to select “MANUAL SETUP”.



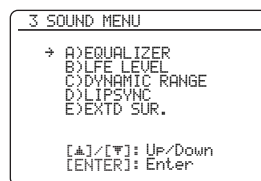
3 Press **Ⓢ**ENTER to enter “MANUAL SETUP”.

The “MANUAL SETUP” display appears in the OSD.



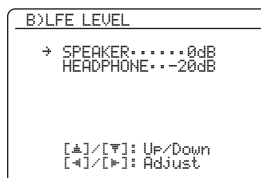
4 Press **Ⓢ**△ / ▽ repeatedly and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER to select and enter the desired menu.

The following displays are examples where “SOUND MENU” is selected.



5 Press **Ⓢ**△ / ▽ repeatedly and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER to select and enter the desired submenu.

The following display is an example where “LFE LEVEL” is selected.



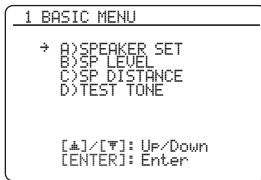
6 Press **Ⓢ**△ / ▽ to select the desired parameter and then **Ⓢ**◀ / ▶ to change the parameter settings.

- Press **Ⓢ**▶ to increase the value.
- Press **Ⓢ**◀ to decrease the value.

7 Press **Ⓢ**SET MENU to exit from “SET MENU”.

1 BASIC MENU

Use this feature to manually adjust the basic speaker settings. Most of the “BASIC MENU” parameters are set automatically when you run the automatic setup.



Set “TEST TONE” to “ON” to output the test tone for the “SPEAKER SET”, “SP LEVEL” and “SP DISTANCE”.

■ Speaker settings A) SPEAKER SET



To select the desired parameter, press **Ⓢ** / **▼** repeatedly.

Extra speaker assignment EXTRA SP ASSIGN

Selects the function of the speakers connected to the EXTRA SP terminals.



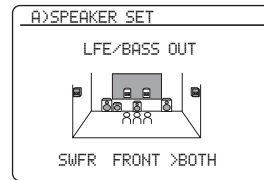
Choice	Descriptions
ZONE2	Select this setting when you use the Zone 2 speakers (see page 107).
FRONT B	Select this setting when you use another front speaker system in the main zone (see page 43).
ZONE B	Select this setting when you use another front speaker system in another room (see page 43).
PRESENCE	Select this setting when you use the presence speakers (see page 13).
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the EXTRA SP terminals.

Notes

- This parameter shares the value with the “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” parameter in “AUTO SETUP” (see page 33).
- If you select “ON” in “BI-AMP” (see page 112), you cannot select “PRESENCE” or “ZONE2” in “EXTRA SP ASSIGN”.
- After changing the “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” setting, carry out “AUTO SETUP” again (see page 32).

LFE/bass out LFE/BASS OUT

Use this feature to select the speakers that output the LFE (low-frequency effect) and the low-frequency signals.



LFE signals output

Choice	Subwoofer(s) and speakers		
	Subwoofer(s)	Front speakers	Other speakers
BOTH	Output	No output	No output
SWFR	Output	No output	No output
FRONT	No output	Output	No output

Low-frequency signals output

Choice	Subwoofer(s) and speakers		
	Subwoofer(s)	Front speakers	Other speakers
BOTH	*1	*2	*3
SWFR	*4	*3	*3
FRONT	No output	*1	*3

*1 Output(s) the low-frequency signals of the front channels and other speakers set to “SMALL”.

*2 Always output the low-frequency signals of the front channels.

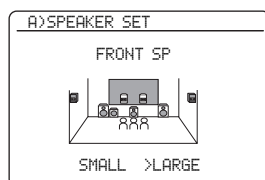
*3 Output the low-frequency signals if the speakers are set to “LARGE”.

*4 Outputs the low-frequency signals of the speakers set to “SMALL” or “NONE”.

Measure for the speaker size

The woofer section of a speaker is

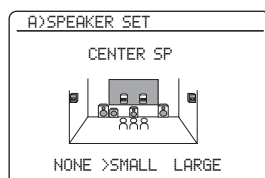
- 16 cm (6.5 in) or larger: large
- smaller than 16 cm (6.5 in): small

Front speakers FRONT SP

Choice	Descriptions
LARGE	Select this setting when the front speakers are large.
SMALL	Select this setting when the front speakers are small.

Note

When “LFE/BASS OUT” is set to “FRONT”, you can select only “LARGE” in “FRONT SP”. If the value of “FRONT SP” is set to other than “LARGE” in advance, this unit change the value to “LARGE” automatically.

Center speaker CENTER SP**When the center speaker is large:**

Select “LARGE” (large).

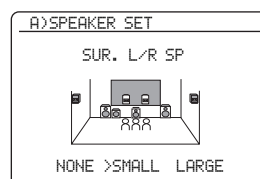
When the center speaker is small:

Select “SMALL” (small).

When you do not use the center speaker:

Select “NONE” (none). The center channel signals are directed to the front left and right speakers.

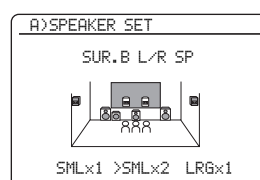
Choice	Descriptions
LARGE	Select this setting when the center speaker is large.
SMALL	Select this setting when the center speaker is small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the center speaker. The center channel signals are directed to the front left and right speakers.

Surround left/right speakers SUR. L/R SP

Choice	Descriptions
LARGE	Select this setting when the surround speakers are large.
SMALL	Select this setting when the surround speakers are small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the surround speakers. This unit is set to the Virtual CINEMA DSP mode (see page 51), and “SUR.B L/R SP” is automatically set to “NONE”.

Surround back left/right speakers

SUR.B L/R SP



Choice	Descriptions
LRGx1	Select this setting when the single surround back speaker is large.
LRGx2	Select this setting when the surround back left and right speakers are Large.
SMLx1	Select this setting when the single surround back speaker is small.
SMLx2	Select this setting when the surround back left and right speakers are small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the surround back speakers. The surround back channel signals are directed to the surround left and right speakers.

Note

If the Dolby TrueHD audio signals are input and “SUR.B L/R SP” is set to “NONE”, the left and right surround back channels are not directed to the surround left and right speakers.

Bass cross over CROSS OVER

Use this feature to select the crossover frequency of all the speakers set to “SML” (or “SMALL”) in “SPEAKER SET” (see page 87). All frequencies below the selected frequency will be sent to the subwoofer(s) or front speakers depending on the setting of “LFE/BASS OUT” in “SPEAKER SET” (see page 87).

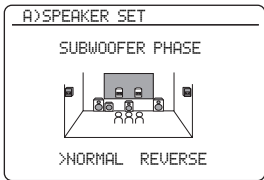
Choices: 40Hz, 60Hz, **80Hz**, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 160Hz, 200Hz



If your subwoofer can adjust the output volume and the crossover frequency, set the volume to about half way (or slightly less) and set the crossover frequency to the maximum.

Subwoofer phase SUBWOOFER PHASE

Use this feature to switch the phase of your subwoofer if bass sounds are lacking or unclear.



Choice	Functions
NORMAL (normal)	Does not change the phase of your subwoofer.
REVERSE (reverse)	Sets the phase of your subwoofer to reverse.

■ **Speaker level** B>SP LEVEL

Use this feature to manually balance the speaker levels between the front left or surround left speakers and each speaker selected in “SPEAKER SET” (see page 87).

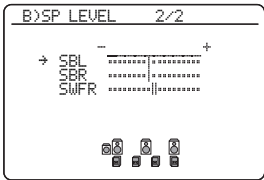
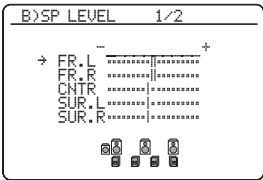
Control range: -10.0 dB to +10.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

Initial setting:

FR.L/FR.R/SWFR/PR.L/PR.R: 0 dB

CNTR/SUR.L/SUR.R/SBL/SBR: -1.0 dB



SP LEVEL	Adjusted speaker
FR.L	Front left speaker
FR.R	Front right speaker
CNTR	Center speaker
SUR.L	Surround left speaker
SUR.R	Surround right speaker
SBL	Surround back left speaker
SBR	Surround back right speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PR.L	Presence left speaker
PR.R	Presence right speaker



- If your subwoofer can adjust the output volume and the crossover frequency, set the volume to about half way (or slightly less) and set the crossover frequency to the maximum.
- Set “TEST TONE” to “ON” to output the test tone for the “SPEAKER LEVEL” setting (see page 90).

Notes

- The available speaker channels differ depending on the setting of the speakers.
- Instead of “SBL” and “SBR”, “SB” is displayed if “SUR. B L/R SP” is set to either “SMLx1” or “LRGx1” (see page 88).

■ Speaker distance C)SP DISTANCE

Use this feature to manually adjust the distance of each speaker and the delay applied to the respective channel. Ideally, each speaker should be the same distance from the main listening position. However, this is not possible in most home situations. Thus, a certain amount of delay must be applied to the sound from each speaker so that all sounds will arrive at the listening position at the same time.

C)SP DISTANCE 1/2	C)SP DISTANCE 2/2
→ UNIT.....feet FRONT L.....10.0ft FRONT R.....10.0ft CENTER.....8.5ft SUR. L.....8.0ft SUR. R.....8.0ft	→ SBL.....8.0ft SBR.....8.0ft SWFR.....10.0ft PRNS L.....10.0ft PRNS R.....10.0ft
[▲]/[▼]: Up/Down [◀]/[▶]: Select	[▲]/[▼]: Up/Down [◀]/[▶]: Adjust

Unit for the speaker distance adjustment UNIT

Initial setting:

[U.S.A. and Canada models]: feet (ft)

[Other models]: meters (m)

Choice	Functions
meters (m)	Adjusts speaker distances in meters.
feet (ft)	Adjusts speaker distances in feet.

Speaker distances

Control range: 0.30 to 24.00 m (1.0 to 80.0 ft)

Control step: 0.10 m (0.5 ft)

Initial setting:

FRONT L/FRONT R/SWFR/PRNS L/PRNS R: 3.00 m (10.0 ft)

CENTER: 2.60 m (8.5 ft)

SUR. L/SUR. R/SBL/SBR: 2.40 m (8.0 ft)

SP DISTANCE	Adjusted speaker
FRONT L	Front left speaker
FRONT R	Front right speaker
CENTER	Center speaker
SUR. L	Surround left speaker
SUR. R	Surround right speaker
SBL	Surround back left speaker
SBR	Surround back right speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PRNS L	Presence left speaker
PRNS R	Presence right speaker

Notes

- The available speaker channels differ depending on the setting of the speakers.
- Instead of “SBL” and “SBR”, “SUR.B” is displayed if “SUR.B L/R SP” is set to either “SMLx1” or “LRGx1” (see page 88).

■ Test tone D)TEST TONE

Turns the test tone output on or off for the “SPEAKER SET”, “SP LEVEL”, and “SP DISTANCE” settings.

D)TEST TONE
>OFF ON
[◀]/[▶]: Select [ENTER]: Return

Choice	Functions
OFF	This unit does not output the test tone for the “SPEAKER SET”, “SP LEVEL”, and “SP DISTANCE” settings.
ON	This unit outputs the test tone for the “SPEAKER SET”, “SP LEVEL”, and “SP DISTANCE” settings.



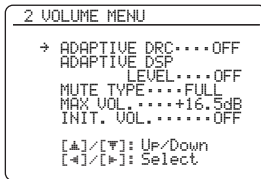
If you use a handheld sound pressure level meter, hold at arm's length and point upwards so that the meter is in the listening position. With the meter set to the 70 dB scale and to C SLOW, calibrate each speaker to 75 dB.

Note

This function is automatically turned off if you exit from “BASIC MENU”.

2 VOLUME MENU

Use this menu to manually adjust the various volume settings.

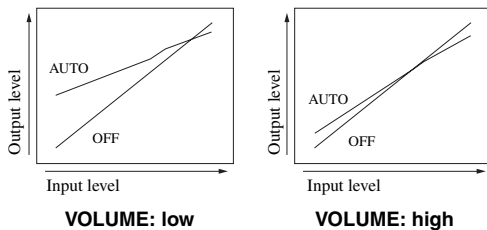


Adaptive dynamic range control

ADAPTIVE DRC

Use this feature to adjust the dynamic range in conjunction with the volume level. This feature is useful when you are listening at lower volumes or at night. When “ADAPTIVE DRC” is set to “AUTO”, this unit controls the dynamic range as follows:

- If the VOLUME setting is low: the dynamic range is narrow
- If the VOLUME setting is high: the dynamic range is wide



Choice	Functions
AUTO	Adjusts the dynamic range automatically.
OFF	Does not adjust the dynamic range automatically.



- You can also adjust the dynamic range of the bitstream signal sources by using “DYNAMIC RANGE” in “SOUND MENU” (see page 93).
- This function is also useful for listening with your headphones.

Note

The adaptive dynamic range control feature does not function when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode (see page 52).

Adaptive DSP level ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL

Use this feature to make fine adjustments of the DSP effect level (see page 75) automatically in conjunction with the volume level.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Adjusts the DSP effect level in conjunction with the volume level.
OFF	Does not adjust the DSP effect level automatically.

Note

Even if you set “ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL” to “AUTO”, this unit does not change but the fine-tunes the specified value of “DSP LEVEL” (see page 75).

Muting type MUTE TYPE

Use this feature to adjust how much the mute function reduces the output volume (see page 45).

Choice	Functions
FULL	Mutes all the audio output.
–20dB	Reduces the current volume by 20 dB.

Maximum volume MAX VOL.

Use this feature to set the maximum volume level in the main zone. This feature is useful to avoid the unexpected loud sound by mistake. For example, the original volume range is –80.0 dB to +16.5 dB. However, when “MAX VOL.” is set to –5.0 dB, the volume range becomes –80.0 dB to –5.0 dB.

Control range: –30.0 dB to +15.0 dB, **+16.5 dB**

Control step: 5.0 dB

Notes

- When this unit is in the auto setup procedure, the volume level is automatically set to 0 dB regardless of the current “MAX VOL.” setting.
- The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the initial volume setting. For example, if “INI.VOL.” is set to –20.0 dB and “MAX VOL.” is set to –30.0 dB, the volume level is automatically set to –30.0 dB when you turn on the power of this unit next time.
- Use “MAX VOL.” in “ZONE SET” to set the initial volume level in Zone 2.

Initial volume INIT. VOL.

Use this feature to set the volume level of the main zone when the power of this unit is turned on.

Choices: **OFF**, MUTE, –80.0 dB to +16.5 dB

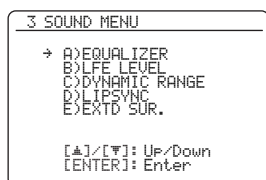
Control step: 0.5 dB

Note

The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the initial volume setting.

3 SOUND MENU

Use this feature to adjust the audio parameters.

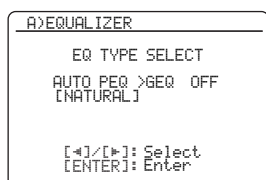


Equalizer A)EQUALIZER

Use this feature to select the parametric equalizer or the graphic equalizer.

Equalizer type select EQ TYPE SELECT

Use this feature to select the type of equalizer.



Choice	Functions
AUTO PEQ	Uses the parametric equalizer adjusted in "AUTO SETUP" (see page 33).
GEQ	Adjusts the built-in 7-frequency band graphic equalizer so that the tonal quality of the speakers matches. Press ⓈENTER to display the graphic equalizer screen.
OFF	Deactivates the equalizing feature.



Currently applied parametric equalizer type (see page 33) appears under "AUTO PEQ".

Note

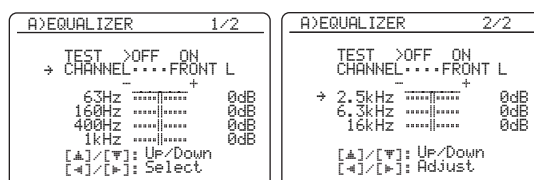
You can select "AUTO PEQ" only when you carry out "AUTO SETUP" in advance (see page 32). In this case, "AUTO PEQ" is automatically selected as the default setting.

Graphic equalizer GEQ

Use this feature to match the tonal quality of the center, surround L/R and surround back L/R, and surround back speakers with that of the front L/R speakers. You can adjust 7 frequency bands (63 Hz, 160 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 16 kHz).

Control range: -6.0 dB to +6.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB



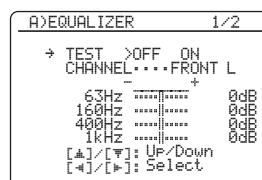
Press **ⓈΔ / ▽** to select a frequency band and **Ⓢ◀ / ▶** to adjust the selected frequency band.

Note

The "GEQ" parameter can be adjusted only when "GEQ" is selected in "EQ TYPE SELECT".

Test tone TEST

Use this feature to make adjustments of "GEQ" while listening to a test tone. To select "TEST", press **ⓈΔ / ▽** repeatedly in the graphic equalizer screen.



Choice	Functions
OFF	Does not output test tones and output the currently selected source component.
ON	Outputs test tones from the selected speakers.

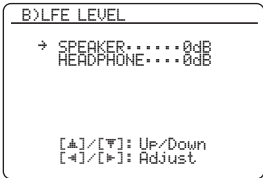
■ Low-frequency effect level

B>LFE LEVEL

Use this feature to adjust the output level of the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel according to the capacity of your subwoofer or headphones. The LFE channel carries low-frequency special effects which are only added to certain scenes. This setting is effective when the input signal contains the LFE channel.

Control range: -20 to 0 dB

Control step: 1 dB



Speakers SPEAKER

Adjusts the speaker LFE level.

Headphones HEADPHONE

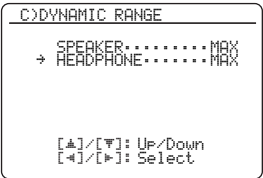
Adjusts the headphone LFE level.

Note

Depending on the settings of “LFE/BASS OUT” (see page 87), some signals may not be output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.

■ Dynamic range C>DYNAMIC RANGE

Use this feature to select the amount of dynamic range compression to be applied to your speakers or headphones. This setting is effective only when this unit is decoding bitstream signals.



Speakers SPEAKER

Adjusts the dynamic range compression for the speakers.

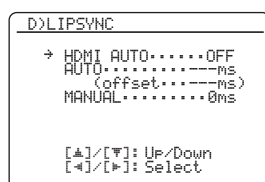
Headphones HEADPHONE

Adjusts the dynamic range compression for the headphones.

Choice	Functions
MIN/AUTO	• MIN: Adjusts the dynamic range to narrow when this unit is decoding bitstream signals (except Dolby TrueHD). • AUTO: Adjusts the dynamic range according to the instruction of the input source signals when this unit is decoding Dolby TrueHD signals.
STD	Adjusts the dynamic range to medium. When this unit is decoding Dolby TrueHD signals, the dynamic range control is always active regardless of the instruction of the input source signals.
MAX	Preserves the greatest amount of dynamic range.

■ Audio and video synchronization (lip sync) D>LIPSYNC

Use this feature to adjust the audio and video synchronization.



HDMI automatic lip sync mode HDMI AUTO

If the connected video monitor is connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit and compatible with the automatic audio and video synchronization function (automatic lip sync), this unit adjusts the audio and video synchronization automatically. Use this feature to activate or deactivate the automatic lip sync.

Choices: ON, **OFF**

If the connected video monitor is compatible with the automatic lip sync:

Select "ON". Use "AUTO" to make fine adjustments of the audio and video synchronization.

If the video monitor is not compatible with the automatic lip sync or you do not want to use the automatic lip sync:

Select "OFF". Use "MANUAL" to adjust the audio and video synchronization.

Auto delay AUTO

Use this feature to make fine adjustments of the audio and video synchronization when you set "HDMI AUTO" to "ON".

Control range: **0** to 240 ms

Control step: 1 ms



"offset" indicates the difference between the value of the audio delay that this unit sets automatically and the value of the audio delay that you set in "AUTO". This unit stores the value of "offset" and applies the value to other automatic lip sync compatible video monitors.

Manual delay MANUAL

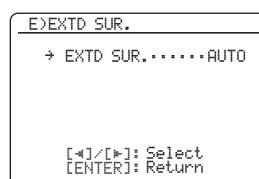
Use this feature to adjust the delay of the sound output manually to synchronize audio with video images when you set "HDMI AUTO" to "OFF".

Control range: **0** to 240 ms

Control step: 1 ms

■ Extended surround E>EXTD SUR.

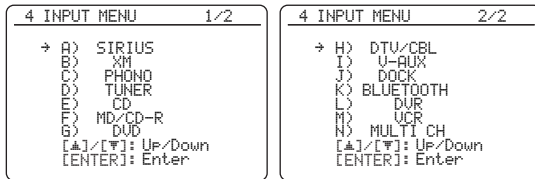
Use this feature to enjoy 6.1/7.1-channel playback for multi-channel sources using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx, Dolby Digital EX, or DTS-ES decoders by using the connected surround back speakers.



Choice	Functions
AUTO	Activates the optimum decoder to play back signals in 6.1/7.1 channels when this unit recognizes a signal flag being input.
PLIIxMovie	Plays back Dolby Digital or DTS signals in 7.1 channels using the Pro Logic IIx movie decoder.
PLIIxMusic	Plays back Dolby Digital or DTS signals in 6.1/7.1 channels using the Pro Logic IIx music decoder.
EX/ES	Plays back Dolby Digital or DTS signals in 6.1/7.1 channels using the Dolby Digital EX or DTS-ES decoder.
OFF	Does not use any decoders to create 6.1/7.1 channels.

4 INPUT MENU

Use this menu to adjust the parameters of each input source.



Input source	Parameter
A)SIRIUS (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM PARENTAL LOCK
B)XM (U.S.A. and Canada models only)	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM
D)TUNER	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM
N)MULTI CH	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM BGV INPUT CH FRONT
C)PHONO	I/O ASSIGNMENT
E)CD	INPUT RENAME
F)MD/CD-R	VOL. TRIM
G)DVD	DECODER MODE
H)DTV/CBL	
I)V-AUX	
L)DVR	
M)VCR	
J)DOCK	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM STANDBY CHARGE
K)BLUETOOTH	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM START PAIRING

Note

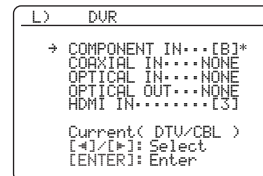
Some parameters described above may not be available for all input sources and some parameters are only available for specific input sources.

Input/output assignment

I/O ASSIGNMENT

Use this feature to assign the input/output jacks according to the component to be used if the initial settings of this unit do not correspond to your needs. Change the parameter to reassign the respective jacks and effectively connect more components.

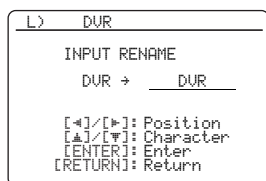
Once the input/output jacks are reassigned, you can select the corresponding component by using the **ⓇINPUT** selector on the front panel (or the input selector buttons on the remote control).



- “NONE” appears in the OSD when any input source is not assigned to the input/output jack.
- Set “OPTICAL OUT” to “(1)” for the digital recording component that you connect to the DIGITAL OUTPUT jack.
- You cannot select a specific item more than once for the same type of jack.
- An asterisk (*) appears to the right of the input/output jack names that have been changed from their previous settings.
- The currently assigned input source for the selected input/output jack appears in the OSD (“Current(DTV/CBL)” in the display example above).

Input rename INPUT RENAME

Use this feature to change the name of the input source that appears in the OSD and in the front panel display.



1 Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to place the “_” (underscore) under the space or the character you want to edit.

2 Press **Ⓢ**▲/▼ to select the character you want to use and then press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to move to the next space.

Notes

- You can use up to 9 characters for each input.
- Press **Ⓢ**▼ to change the character in the following order, or press **Ⓢ**▲ to go in the reverse order:
A to Z, 0 to 9, a to z, symbols (#, *, -, +, etc.), space.

3 Repeat steps 1 through 2 to rename each input source.

4 Press **Ⓢ**ENTER to complete.

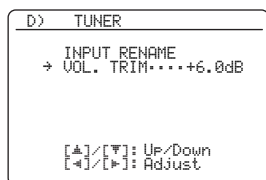
Volume trim VOL. TRIM

Use this feature to adjust the level of the signal input at each jack. This feature is useful if you want to balance the level of each input source to avoid sudden changes in volume when switching between input sources.

Control range: -6.0 dB to +6.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

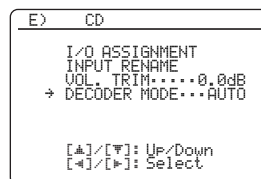
Initial setting: 0.0 dB



This parameter also affects the signals output at the audio ZONE OUT jacks.

Decoder mode DECODER MODE

Use this feature to switch the decoder activation mode. When you select “DTS” and digital audio signals are input, this unit always activates the DTS decoder and only plays back the DTS digital audio signals.



Choice	Functions
AUTO	Automatically detects digital audio signal input types and selects the appropriate decoder.
DTS	Activates the DTS decoder and plays back only DTS digital audio signals when digital audio signals are input.

Note

“DECODER MODE” is only available when the digital audio input jacks (HDMI, OPTICAL, and/or COAXIAL) are assigned to the selected input source.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio parental lock
PARENTAL LOCK

Use this feature to set the code number for locking the desired SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels. Refer to “Setting the Parental Lock” on page 67 for details.

Charge on standby STANDBY CHARGE

Use this feature to select whether this unit charges the battery of the stationed iPod or not when this unit is in the standby mode.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Charges the battery of the stationed iPod when this unit is turned on and in the standby mode.
OFF	Charges the battery of the stationed iPod only when this unit is turned on.

Start pairing START PAIRING

Use this feature to start pairing the connected Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) with your Bluetooth component. For details about the pairing, refer to “Pairing the Bluetooth™ adapter and your Bluetooth component” on page 72.

To ensure security, a time limit of 8 minutes is set for the pairing operation. You are recommended to read and fully understand all the instructions before starting.

- 1

Press  ENTER to start pairing.

The connected Bluetooth adapter starts searching Bluetooth components. “Searching...” appears in the video monitor.
- 2

Check that the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth adapter.

If the Bluetooth component the Bluetooth adapter, “YBA-10 YAMAHA” (example) appears in the Bluetooth device list.

- 3

Select the Bluetooth adapter in the Bluetooth device list and then enter the pass key “0000” on the Bluetooth component.

Once this unit completes the pairing successfully, “Pairing completed” appears.



To cancel the pairing, press  RETURN to exit from “START PAIRING”.

- 4

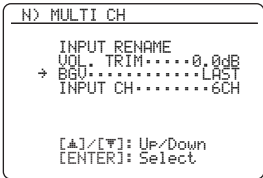
Press  RETURN to exit from “START PAIRING”.

Notes

- If the connected Bluetooth adapter cannot find any Bluetooth components, “Not found” appears.
- If a Bluetooth adapter is not connected to this unit, “No Bluetooth Adapter” appears.

Multi-channel input BGV BGV

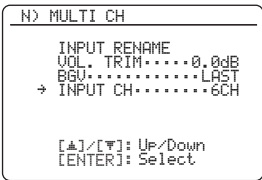
Use this feature to select the video source played in the background of the sources input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks.



Choice	Functions
LAST	Automatically selects the last selected video source as the background video source.
DVD, DTV/ CBL, DVR, VCR, V-AUX	Selects the corresponding input source as the background video source.
OFF	Does not play the video source in the background.

Input channels INPUT CH

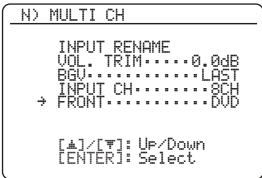
Use this setting to select the number of channels input from an external decoder (see page 25).
Choices: **6CH**, 8CH



If the connected component outputs discrete 6-channel audio signals.
Select “6CH”.

If the connected component outputs discrete 8-channel audio signals.
Select “8CH”. Also set “FRONT” (see below) to the analog audio jacks at which the front left and right channel signals output from the connected component are input.

Front left and right channels input jack FRONT
If you selected “8CH” in “INPUT CH”, you can select the analog audio jacks at which the front left and right channel signals output from the connected external decoder is input.
Choices: CD, MD/CD-R, **DVD**, DTV/CBL, DVR, VCR, V-AUX

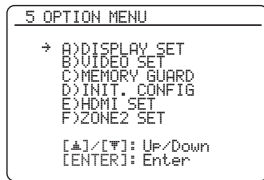


Note

“FRONT” parameter appears only when you set “INPUT CH” to “8CH”.

5 OPTION MENU

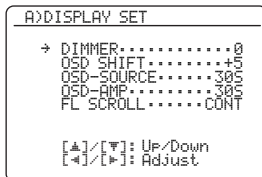
Use this menu to adjust the optional system parameters.



■ Display settings A)DISPLAY SET

Note

Use “VIDEO” of “INIT” in “ADVANCED SETUP” to set “OSD SHIFT” to the factory presets (see page 112).



Dimmer DIMMER

Use this feature to adjust the brightness of the front panel display.

Control range: -4 to 0

Control step: 1

- Press **8**◀ to make the front panel display dimmer.
- Press **8**▶ to make the front panel display brighter.

OSD shift OSD SHIFT

Use this feature to adjust the vertical position of the OSD.

Control range: -5 (downward) to +5 (upward)

Control step: 1

Initial setting: 0

- Press **8**◀ to lower the position of the OSD.
- Press **8**▶ to raise the position of the OSD.

Source feature OSD display time OSD-SOURCE

Use this feature to set the amount of time to display the HD Radio (U.S.A. model only), XM Satellite Radio, or SIRIUS Satellite Radio information or iPod menu in the OSD after you perform a certain operation.

Choice	Functions
ON	Displays the OSD unceasingly during an operation.
10S	Turns off the OSD 10 seconds after you perform a certain operation.
30S	Turns off the OSD 30 seconds after you perform a certain operation.

Amplifier function OSD display time OSD-AMP

Use this feature to set the amount of time to display the status information screen after you perform a certain operation.

Choice	Functions
ON	Displays the OSD unceasingly during an operation.
10S	Turns off the OSD 10 seconds after you perform a certain operation.
30S	Turns off the OSD 30 seconds after you perform a certain operation.

Front panel display scroll FL SCROLL

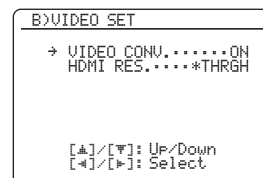
Use this feature to set the mode to display the HD Radio (U.S.A model only), XM Satellite Radio information, SIRIUS Satellite Radio information, or iPod menu (such as song title or channel name) in the front panel display.

Choice	Functions
CONT	Continuous mode. Select this to display the operation status in the front panel display in a continuous manner.
ONCE	Scroll-once mode. Select this to display the operation status in the front panel display by the first 14 alphanumeric characters after scrolling all characters once.

■ Video settings B)VIDEO SET

Note

Use “VIDEO” of “INIT” in “ADVANCED SETUP” to set the parameters in “VIDEO SET” to the factory presets (see page 112).



Video conversion VIDEO CONV.

Use this feature to set whether to convert the video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO, and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks.

Choice	Functions
ON	Converts composite, S-video, and component video signals interchangeably and up-converts composite, S-video, and component video signals to HDMI video signals.
OFF	Does not convert any signals.

Notes

- This unit does not convert 480 line video signals and 576 line video signals interchangeably.
- The analog component video signals with 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) of resolution are converted into the S-video or composite video signals and output at the S VIDEO MONITOR OUT and VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.
- The converted video signals are only output at the MONITOR OUT jacks. When recording a video source, you must make the same type of video connections between each component.
- When composite video or S-video signals from a VCR are converted into component video signals, the picture quality may suffer depending on your VCR.
- Unconventional signals input at the composite video or S-video jacks cannot be converted or may be output abnormally. In such cases, set "VIDEO CONV." to "OFF".

HDMI resolution HDMI RES.

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the HDMI up-scaling of the analog video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks so that the up-scaled video signals are output at the HDMI OUT jack.

This unit up-scales the video signals as follows:

- 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) → 480p/576p, 1080i, 720p, or 1080p
- 480p/576p → 1080i, 720p, or 1080p



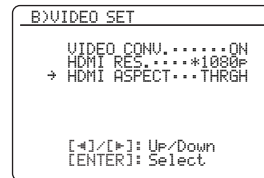
Choice	Functions
THROUGH	Does not up-scale any analog video signals.
480p (or 576p), 1080i, 720p, 1080p	Up-scales analog video signals to 480p or 576p, 1080i, 720p, or 1080p of resolution.

Notes

- This unit does not up-scale the analog component video signals with 720p or 1080i of resolution.
- The "HDMI RES." parameter appears only when you set "VIDEO CONV." to "ON".
- If you connect your video monitor via HDMI connection, this unit automatically detects the available video signal resolution of the video monitor, and an asterisk (*) appears on the left of the available video signal resolution(s).
- If this unit cannot detect the available video signal resolution(s) of the connected video monitor, set "MON. CHK" (see page 112) to "SKIP" and then set "HDMI RES." again.
- This unit does not convert between 480 line video signals and 576 line video signals.

HDMI aspect ratio HDMI ASPECT

Use this feature to select the adjustment of aspect ratio for analog video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack.



Choice	Functions
THRGH	Does not make any adjustments to the aspect ratio for the HDMI video signal sources.
16:9	Displays video images with the aspect ratio of 4:3 on your video monitor with the aspect ratio of 16:9. Black stripes appear on the right and left sides as a result.
SMART	Fits video images with the aspect ratio of 4:3 to your video monitor with the aspect ratio of 16:9.

Notes

- When "HDMI RES." is set to "THROUGH", you cannot make any adjustments to "HDMI ASPECT".
- If the aspect ratio of the input video source is other than 4:3, this unit automatically ignores the setting of "HDMI ASPECT".
- When "HDMI ASPECT" is set to "SMART", the video images of the edge of the video monitor are rather stretched.
- When the video signals are input at HDMI IN jacks or the signals are input with 720p, 1080i or 1080p of resolution, the setting of "HDMI ASPECT" does not affect the video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack.

■ Memory guard C>MEMORY GUARD

Use this feature to prevent accidental changes to sound field program parameter and other system settings.



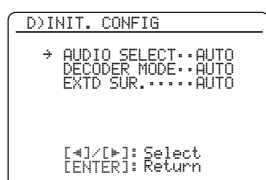
Choice	Functions
OFF	Turns off the “MEMORY GUARD” feature.
ON	Protects: – sound field program parameters – “AUTO SETUP” items – all speaker levels – “MANUAL SETUP” items

Notes

- You can change the following parameters even if “MEMORY GUARD” is set to “ON”:
 - “EXTD SUR.” in “SOUND MENU” (see page 94)
 - “DECODER MODE” in “INPUT MENU” (see page 96)
 - “PARENTAL LOCK” in “INPUT MENU” (see page 96)
 - “MEMORY GUARD”
- When “MEMORY GUARD” is set to “ON”, “” appears at the top right of the “SET MENU” screen.
- You can change the settings of “SUR.” in the sound field program parameter screen (see page 79) even if “MEMORY GUARD” is set to “ON”.

■ Initial configuration D>INIT. CONFIG

Use this feature to select the settings of the audio input jack select, active decoders and extended surround when you turn on this unit.



Audio select AUDIO SELECT

Use this feature to designate the default audio input jack select setting (see page 44) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Automatically detects the type of input signals and selects the appropriate audio input jack select setting.
LAST	Automatically selects the last input jack select setting used for the connected input source.

Decoder mode DECODER MODE

Use this feature to designate the default decoder mode (see page 96) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Automatically detects the type of input signals and select the appropriate decoder mode setting.
LAST	Automatically selects the last decoder mode setting used for the connected input source.

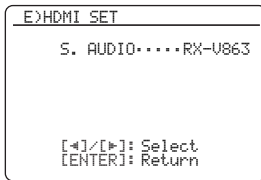
Extended surround EXTD SUR.

Use this feature to designate the extended decoder mode (see page 94) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Automatically detects the digital audio input signals and activates the appropriate decoder.
LAST	Automatically selects the last decoder mode set for “EXTD SUR.” in “SOUND MENU”.

■ HDMI set E>HDMI SET

Use this feature to select the component to play back HDMI audio signals.



Support audio S.AUDIO

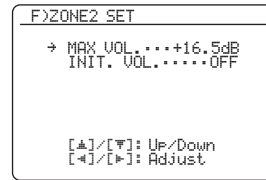
Use this feature to select whether to play back HDMI audio signals on this unit or on another HDMI component connected to the HDMI OUT jack on the rear panel of this unit.

Choice	Functions
RX-V863	Plays back HDMI audio signals on this unit. The HDMI audio signals input at the HDMI input jacks of this unit are not output to the HDMI component connected to the HDMI OUT jack on the rear panel of this unit.
OTHER	Plays back HDMI audio signals on another HDMI component connected to the HDMI OUT jack.

Notes

- This unit transmits audio and video signals input at the HDMI input jacks to the HDMI out jack only when this unit is turned on even if “S.AUDIO” is set to “OTHER”.
- Available audio/video signals depend on the specification of the connected video monitor. Refer to the instruction manual of each connected component.

■ Zone 2 settings F>ZONE2 SET



Zone 2 Maximum volume MAX VOL.

Use this feature to set the maximum volume level in the Zone 2.

Control range: –30.0dB to +15.0 dB, **+16.5 dB**

Control step: 5.0 dB

Notes

- The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the “INI.VOL.” setting. For example, when “INI.VOL.” is set to –20.0 dB and then “MAX VOL.” is set to –30.0 dB, the volume level is automatically set to –30.0 dB when you turn on the power of this unit next time.
- The “MAX VOL.” setting does not affect the output level at the “ZONE 2 OUT” jacks.

Zone 2 Initial volume INI.VOL.

Use this feature to set the volume level of Zone 2 when the power of this unit is turned on.

Choices: **OFF**, MUTE, –80.0 dB to +16.5 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

Notes

- The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the “INI.VOL.” setting.
- When you select “FRONT B”, “PRNS”, “Zone B”, or “NONE” in “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” (see page 87), “Zone 2 SP Not Assigned” appears in the OSD and the “ZONE2 SET” parameter is not available.
- The “INI.VOL.” setting does not affect the output level at the “ZONE 2 OUT” jacks.

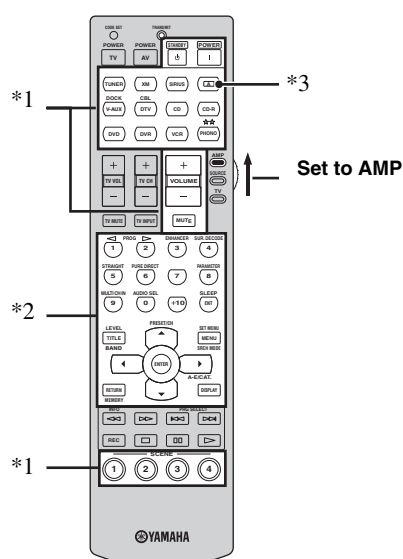
Remote control features

In addition to controlling this unit, the remote control can also operate other audiovisual components made by Yamaha and other manufacturers. To control your TV or other components, you must set up the appropriate remote control code for each input source (see page 104).

Controlling this unit, a TV, or other components

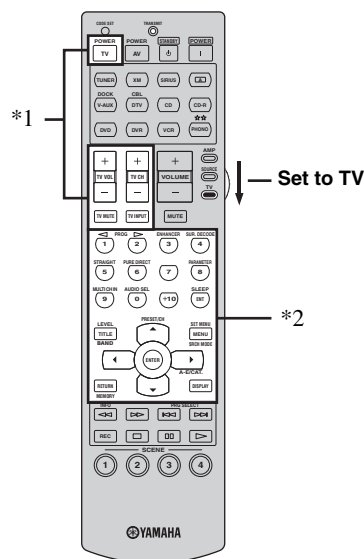
■ Controlling this unit

Set the operation mode selector to **⑩AMP** to control this unit.



■ Controlling a TV

Set the operation mode selector to **⑩TV** to control your TV. To control your TV, you must set the appropriate remote control code for **④DTV/CBL** or **④PHONO** (see page 104). When you set the remote control codes for both **④DTV/CBL** and **④PHONO**, priority is given to the one set for **④DTV/CBL**.



Notes

- *1 These buttons always control this unit regardless of the operation mode selector position.
- *2 These buttons control this unit only when the component operation mode selector is set to **⑩AMP**.
- *3 **④A** is the optional component control area button. You can control the desired component without changing the input source of this unit.

Notes

- *1 These buttons always control your TV regardless of the operation mode selector position.

Remote control	Digital TV/Cable TV
TV POWER	Turns the power on or off.
TV VOL +/-	Increases or decreases the volume level.
TV CH +/-	Changes the channel number.
TV MUTE	Mutes the audio output.
TV INPUT	Changes the input source.

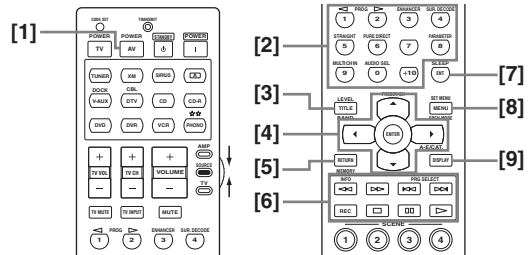
- *2 These buttons control your TV only when the operation mode selector is set to **⑩TV**. For details, see the "Digital TV/Cable TV" column on page 103.

■ Controlling other components

Set the operation mode selector to **⑩SOURCE** to control other components selected with the input selector buttons (④). You must set the appropriate remote control code for each input source in advance (see page 104). The following table shows the function of each control button used to control other components assigned to each input selector button (④). Be advised that some buttons may not correctly operate the selected component.



The remote control has 12 modes (control areas) to control components so that the remote control can operate up to 12 different components.



Remote control	DVD player/recorder	VCR	Digital TV/Cable TV	LD player	CD player	MD/CD recorder	Tuner
[1] AV POWER	Power *1	Power *1	Power *2	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	
[2] 1-9, 0, +10	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Preset stations (1-8)/Numeric buttons
[3] TITLE	Title						Band
[4] PRESET/CH	Up	VCR channel up	Up				Preset up (1-8)/Tuning up
PRESET/CH	Down	VCR channel down	Down				Preset down (1-8)/Tuning down
A-E/CAT.	Left		Left				Preset down (A-E)
A-E/CAT.	Right		Right				Preset up (A-E)
ENTER	Enter		Enter				Hold
[5] RETURN	Return		Return				Memory
[6] REC	Disc skip (player) Rec (recorder)	Rec	Rec *2		Disc skip	Rec	
	Play	Play	Play *2	Play	Play	Play	
	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward *2	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward	Information
	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward *2	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward	
	Pause	Pause	Pause *2	Pause	Pause	Pause	
	Skip backward	Skip backward	Skip backward *2	Skip backward	Skip backward	Skip backward	Audio program down
	Skip forward	Skip forward	Skip forward *2	Skip forward	Skip forward	Skip forward	Audio program up
	Stop	Stop	Stop *2	Stop	Stop	Stop	
[7] ENT	Title/Index	Enter	Enter	Chapter/Time	Index	Index	Enter
[8] MENU	Menu		Menu				Search mode
[9] DISPLAY	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display

Notes

*1 This button is operational only when the original remote control supplied with the component has a POWER button.

*2 These buttons operate your VCR or DVD recorder only when you set the appropriate remote control code for DVR (see page 104).

Setting remote control codes

You can control other components by setting the appropriate remote control codes. For a complete list of available remote control codes, refer to “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.

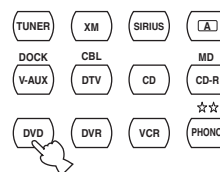
Remote control code default settings

Input source	Component category	Manufacturer	Default code
TUNER	TUNER	Yamaha	82915
XM	TUNER	Yamaha	82918
SIRIUS	TUNER	Yamaha	82176
A	—	—	—
V-AUX	OTHER AUDIO ACCESSORIES (iPod)	Yamaha	82981
DTV/CBL	—	—	—
CD	CD	Yamaha	62907
MD/CD-R	CD-R	Yamaha	71292
DVD	DVD	Yamaha	42543
DVR	DVR	Yamaha	52544
VCR	—	—	—
PHONO	—	—	—

Note

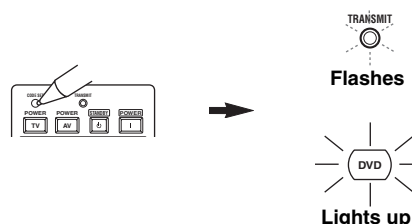
You may not be able to operate your Yamaha component even if a Yamaha remote control code is preset as listed above. In this case, try setting another Yamaha remote control code.

- Press one of the input selector buttons (④) on the remote control to select the control area you want to set up.



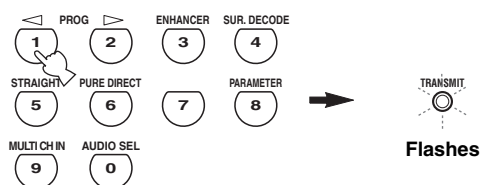
- Press ② **CODE SET** using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the selected input selector button lights up.



- Press the numeric buttons (0 to 9) (⑥) to enter the five-digit remote control code for the component to be used.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the remote control code for the selected component is set.



Refer to “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.

Notes

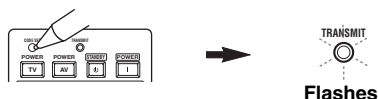
- If the manufacturer of your component has more than one code, try each of them until you find the correct one.
- If you do not press any buttons within 30 seconds in step 3, the setup process is canceled. If this happens, repeat the setup procedure.
- If you enter the code number “9980”, the remote control code previously set for the selected control area is cleared.

Resetting all remote control codes

Use this feature to clear all the remote control codes previously set and reset all of them to the initial factory settings.

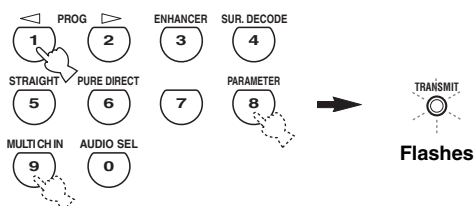
1 Press ② **CODE SET** using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



2 Press the numeric buttons (⑥) to enter the code number “9981”.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and all the remote control codes previously set are cleared and reset to the initial factory settings.



If you do not press any buttons within 30 seconds after step 1, the clearing process is canceled. In this case, repeat the clearing procedure.

Using multi-zone configuration

This unit allows you to configure a multi-zone audio system. The Zone 2 feature allows you to set this unit to reproduce separate input sources in the main zone and the second zone (Zone 2). You can control this unit from the second zone using the supplied remote control.

Only analog signals are sent to the second zone. Any source you want to listen to in the second zone must be connected to the analog AUDIO IN jacks of this unit.

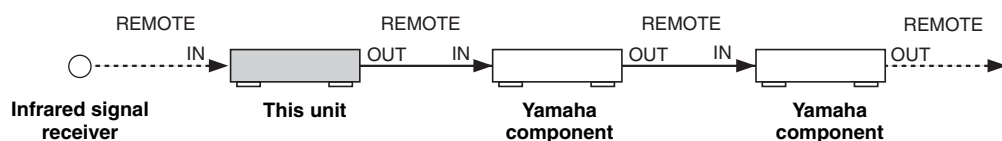
Connecting Zone 2

You need the following additional equipment to use the multi-zone functions of this unit:

- An infrared signal receiver in the second zone.
- An infrared signal emitter in the main zone. This emitter transmits the infrared signals from the remote control via the infrared signal receiver in the second zone to a CD player or a DVD player, etc. in the main zone.
- An amplifier and speakers in the second zone.

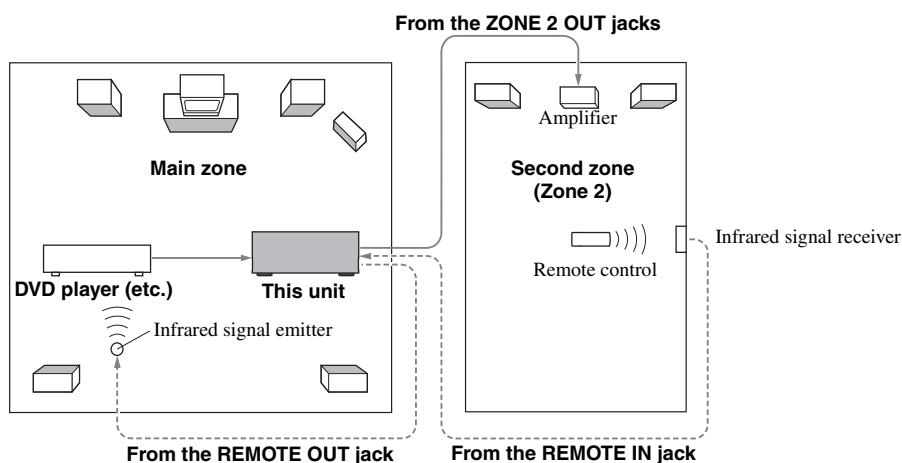


- Since there are many possible ways to connect and use this unit in a multi-zone configuration, we recommend that you consult with your nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about the Zone 2 connections that best meet your requirements.
- Some Yamaha models are able to connect directly to the REMOTE jacks of this unit. If you own these products, you may not need to use an infrared signal emitter. Up to 6 Yamaha components can be connected as shown below.



■ Using the external amplifier

Connect the amplifier/receiver in the second zone and other components to this unit as follows.



Note

To avoid unexpected noise, DO NOT USE the Zone 2 feature with CDs encoded in DTS.

■ Using the internal amplifier of this unit

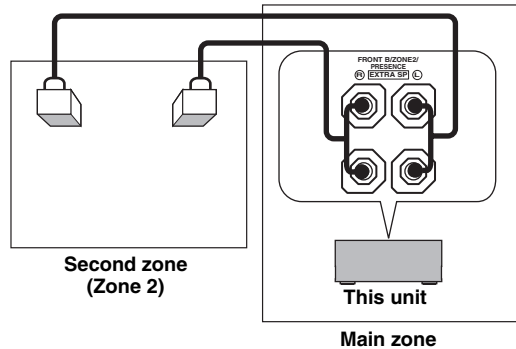
Important safety notice

The EXTRA SP speaker terminals of this Receiver should not be connected to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or more than one loudspeaker per channel.

Connection to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or multiple speakers per channel could create an abnormally low impedance load resulting in amplifier damage. See this owner's manual for correct usage.

Compliance with minimum speaker impedance information for all channels must be maintained at all times. This information is found on the back panel of your Receiver.

Connect the speakers in the second zone to the EXTRA SP speaker terminals and then set the "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "ZONE2" (see page 87).



- You can use the speakers connected EXTRA SP speaker terminals as the front speaker system of another zone. Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "ZONE B" (see page 87).
- When you use the internal amplifiers for the Zone 2 speakers, you can adjust the volume level and set the initial volume level and maximum volume level of the Zone 2 speakers (see page 101).

Controlling Zone 2

You can select and control Zone 2 by using the control buttons on the front panel or on the remote control. The available operations are as follows:

- Selecting the input source of Zone 2.
- Tuning into FM or AM when "TUNER" is selected as the input source of Zone 2 (see page 53).
- Tuning into XM Satellite Radio when "XM" is selected as the input source of Zone 2 (see page 59) (U.S.A. and Canada models only).
- Tuning into SIRIUS Satellite Radio when "SIRIUS" is selected as the input source of Zone 2 (see page 64) (U.S.A. and Canada models only).
- Enjoying music stored on your iPod stationed in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10 sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit when "V-AUX" is selected as the input source (see page 70).

Note

You must complete each step while the ZONE2 indicator is flashing in the front panel display. Otherwise, the Zone 2 mode is automatically canceled and this unit returns to the normal operation mode. In this case, repeat the Zone 2 selection procedure.

■ Controlling Zone 2 with the front panel

Turning on Zone 2

Press **Ⓜ ZONE 2 ON/OFF** to turn on Zone 2.

Activating the Zone 2 operation mode

Press **Ⓜ ZONE CONTROL** to control Zone 2.

The ZONE2 indicator flashes in the front panel display for approximately 10 seconds.



Operate the following operations after activating the Zone 2 operation mode.

Operating Zone 2

Rotate the **Ⓐ INPUT** selector to select the desired input source while the **ZONE2** indicator is flashing in the front panel display.

- Select “TUNER” as the input source to use the TUNER features in Zone 2. For details about the TUNER operations, see “FM/AM tuning” on page 53.
- Select “XM” as the input source to use the XM Satellite Radio features in Zone 2. For details about the XM Satellite Radio operations, see “XM Satellite Radio tuning” on page 59.
- Select “SIRIUS” as the input source to use the SIRIUS Satellite Radio features in Zone 2. For details about the SIRIUS Satellite Radio operations, see “SIRIUS Satellite Radio™ tuning” on page 64.
- Select “V-AUX” as the input source to use iPod features or Bluetooth features in Zone 2. For details about the iPod operations, see “Using iPod™” on page 70 or “Using Bluetooth™ components” on page 72.

Set Zone 2 to the standby mode

Press **Ⓜ ZONE 2 ON/OFF** to set Zone 2 to the standby mode.



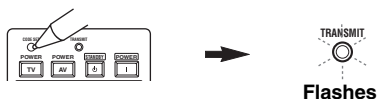
Press **Ⓛ SYSTEM OFF** to set the main zone and Zone 2 to the standby mode simultaneously.

Setting the remote control to the Zone 2 mode

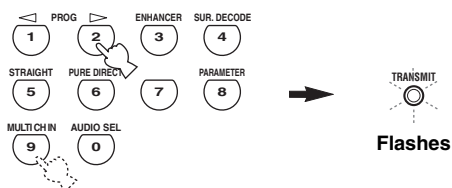
The remote control is originally set to the main mode to control the main zone. To control Zone 2 with the remote control, you must first set the remote control to the Zone 2 mode.

1 Press **Ⓜ CODE SET** using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The **Ⓜ TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



2 Press the numeric buttons (**Ⓜ**) to enter the code number “9992”.



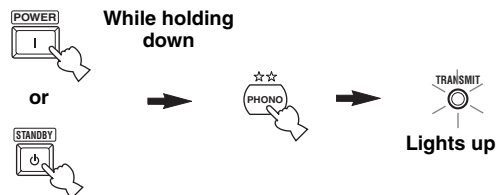
Controlling Zone 2 with the remote control

Turning on Zone 2

Press and hold **Ⓜ POWER** or **Ⓜ STANDBY** and then press **Ⓜ ☆☆** to set the remote control to the Zone 2 mode.

- Press **Ⓜ POWER** when the main zone is turned on.
- Press **Ⓜ STANDBY** when the main zone is turned off.

The **Ⓜ TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control lights up while the remote control is set to the Zone 2 mode.



Notes

- When the remote control is set to the Zone 2 mode, **Ⓜ POWER**, **Ⓜ STANDBY**, **Ⓜ VOLUME +/-**, **Ⓜ MUTE**, and the input selector buttons (**Ⓜ**) are set to control Zone 2. However, the rest of the remote control buttons remain in the main mode.
- The remote control automatically exits from the Zone 2 mode in the following cases:
 - when you do not make any operations within 10 seconds after the remote control is set to the Zone 2 mode.
 - when you press a remote control button other than **Ⓜ POWER**, **Ⓜ STANDBY**, **Ⓜ VOLUME +/-**, **Ⓜ MUTE**, the **Ⓜ SCENE** buttons and the input selector buttons (**Ⓜ**).

Activating the Zone 2 operation mode

Press **Ⓜ POWER** to turn on Zone 2.

Operating Zone 2

Press one of the input selector buttons (**Ⓜ**) to select the desired input source of Zone 2.

Setting Zone 2 to the standby mode

Press **Ⓜ STANDBY** to set Zone 2 to the standby mode.

Advanced setup

This unit has additional menus that are displayed in the front panel display. The advanced setup menu offers additional operations to adjust and customize the way this unit operates. Change the initial settings (indicated in bold under each parameter) to reflect the needs of your listening environment.

Notes

- The settings you make are reflected next time you press **ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF** to turn on this unit (see page 29).
- Only **ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF**, **ⓁSYSTEM OFF**, **ⓂTONE CONTROL** and the **ⓃPROGRAM** selector are effective while you are using the advanced setup menu.
- No other operations can be made while you are using the advanced setup menu.
- The advanced setup menu is only available in the front panel display.

Using the advanced setup

1 Press ⓁSYSTEM OFF on the front panel to set this unit to the standby mode.

2 Press and hold ⓂTONE CONTROL and then press ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF to turn on this unit.

This unit turns on, and the advanced setup menu appears in the front panel display.



3 Rotate the ⓃPROGRAM selector to select the parameter you want to adjust.

The name of the selected parameter appears in the front panel display.



4 Press ⓂTONE CONTROL repeatedly to change the selected parameter setting.

5 Press ⓁSYSTEM OFF to save the new setting and set this unit to the standby mode.



The settings you made are reflected next time you turn on this unit.

■ Speaker impedance SP IMP.

Use this feature to set the speaker impedance of this unit so that it matches that of your speakers.

Choices: **8Ω MIN**, **6ΩMIN**

- Select “8ΩMIN” to set the speaker impedance to 8 Ω.
- Select “6ΩMIN” to set the speaker impedance to 6 Ω.

SP IMP.	Speaker	Impedance level
8ΩMIN	Front	If you use one set (A or B), the impedance of each speaker must be 8 Ω or higher.
	Center	
	Surround	The impedance of each speaker must be 8 Ω or higher.
	Surround back	
6ΩMIN	Front	If you use one set (A or B), the impedance of each speaker must be 4 Ω or higher.
	Center	
	Surround	The impedance of each speaker must be 6 Ω or higher.
	Surround back	

* The Canada model cannot use two separate speaker systems (A and B) simultaneously when “SP IMP.” is set to “8ΩMIN”.

See page 109 for the operation of the advanced setup.

■ Remote control AMP ID REMOTE AMP

Use this feature to set the AMP ID of this unit for remote control recognition. This feature is useful when you operate this unit and the other Yamaha receivers/ amplifiers in the same room separately.

Choices: ID1, ID2

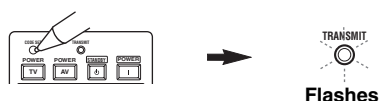
- Select "ID1" when the remote control AMP ID code is set to "00001".
- Select "ID2" when the remote control AMP ID code is set to "00002".

Setting remote control AMP ID codes

You need to set the remote control AMP ID code for the remote control.

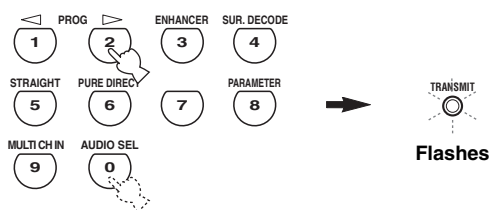
1 Press ②CODE SET using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫TRANSMIT indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



2 Press the numeric buttons (⑥) to enter the code number "00001" or "00002".

The ⑫TRANSMIT indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the AMP ID code is changed.



AMP ID code *1	Function	Remote control AMP ID *2
00001 (initial setting)	To operate this unit using the default code.	ID1 (initial setting)
00002	To operate this unit using an alternative code.	ID2

*1 The remote control setting

*2 The setting of this unit

■ Remote control TUNER ID REMOTE TU

Use this feature to set the TUNER ID of this unit for remote control recognition.

Choices: ID1, ID2

- Select "ID1" when the remote control TUNER ID code is set to "82915".
- Select "ID2" when the remote control TUNER ID code is set to "82178".

Setting remote control TUNER ID codes

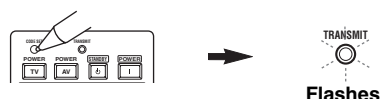
You need to set the remote control TUNER ID library code for the remote control.

1 Press ④TUNER to select "TUNER" as the input source.



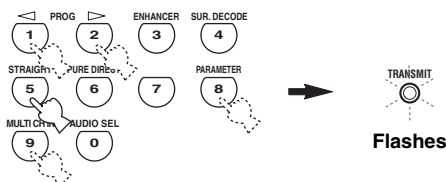
2 Press ②CODE SET using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫TRANSMIT indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



3 Press the numeric buttons (⑥) to enter the code number "82915" or "82178".

The ⑫TRANSMIT indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the TUNER ID code is changed.



TUNER ID code *1	Function	Remote control TUNER ID *2
82915 (initial setting)	To operate this unit using the default code.	ID1 (initial setting)
82178	To operate this unit using an alternative code.	ID2

*1 The remote control setting

*2 The setting of this unit

See page 109 for the operation of the advanced setup.

■ Remote control XM ID REMOTE XM (U.S.A. and Canada models only)

Use this feature to set the XM ID of this unit for remote control recognition.

Choices: ID1, ID2

- Select "ID1" when the remote control XM ID code is set to "82918".
- Select "ID2" when the remote control XM ID code is set to "82179".

Setting remote control XM ID codes

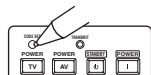
You need to set the remote control XM ID code for the remote control.

- 1 Press ④ **XM** to select "XM" as the input source.



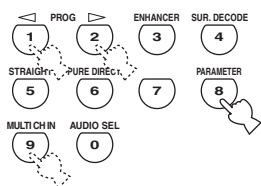
- 2 Press ② **CODE SET** using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



- 3 Press the numeric buttons (⑥) to enter the code number "82918" or "82179".

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the XM ID code is changed.



XM ID code *1	Function	Remote control XM ID *2
82918 (initial setting)	To operate this unit using the default code.	ID1 (initial setting)
82179	To operate this unit using an alternative code.	ID2

*1 The remote control setting

*2 The setting of this unit

■ Remote control SIRIUS ID REMOTE SR (U.S.A. and Canada models only)

Use this feature to set the SIRIUS ID of this unit for remote control recognition.

Choices: ID1, ID2

- Select "ID1" when the remote control SIRIUS ID code is set to "82176".
- Select "ID2" when the remote control SIRIUS ID code is set to "82177".

Setting remote control SIRIUS ID codes

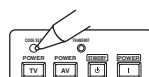
You need to set the remote control SIRIUS ID code for the remote control.

- 1 Press ④ **TUNER** to select "SIRIUS" as the input source.



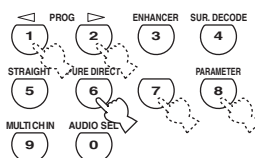
- 2 Press ② **CODE SET** using a ballpoint pen or a similar object.

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice.



- 3 Press the numeric buttons (⑥) to enter the code number "82176" or "82177".

The ⑫ **TRANSMIT** indicator on the remote control flashes twice, and the SIRIUS ID code is changed.



SIRIUS ID code *1	Function	Remote control SIRIUS ID *2
82176 (initial setting)	To operate this unit using the default code.	ID1 (initial setting)
82177	To operate this unit using an alternative code.	ID2

*1 The remote control setting

*2 The setting of this unit

See page 109 for the operation of the advanced setup.

■ SIRIUS Satellite Radio Parental Lock personal identification number reset SR PIN

Use this feature to set the code number (personal identification number) for the SIRIUS Satellite Radio Parental Lock feature to the initial factory setting. This feature is useful when you forget or want to change the current code number.

Choices: **RESET**, **CANCEL**

- Select “RESET” to set the code number to the initial factory setting.
- Select “CANCEL” to set the code number to the initial factory setting.

Note

Even if you set “SR PIN” to “RESET”, this unit does not unlock the locked channels. The initial factory setting of the Parental Lock code number is “0000”.

■ Bi-amplifier setting BI-AMP

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the bi-amplifier function (see page 16).

Choices: **ON**, **OFF**

- Select “ON” if you want to activate the bi-amplifier function. “SUR.B L/R SP” is set to “NONE” automatically, and this unit outputs the front channel audio signals at the SURROUND BACK/BI-AMP speaker terminals.
- Select “OFF” if you want to deactivate the bi-amplifier function.

Note

When “BI-AMP” is set to “ON”, you can only select “FRONT B”, “ZONE B”, or “NONE” in “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” (see page 87).

■ SCENE IR code setting SCENE IR

Use this feature to output the remote control signals at the REMOTE OUT jack automatically when this unit is in the SCENE mode.

Choices: **ON**, **OFF**

- Select “ON” when the component connected to the REMOTE OUT jack is the Yamaha component and has the capability of the SCENE control signals. This unit automatically sends the remote control signals to the component.
- Select “OFF” when the component connected to the REMOTE OUT jack is not the Yamaha component and does not have the capability of the SCENE control signals.

Note

If noises are output when you operate the SCENE function, set “SCENE IR” to “OFF”.

■ Monitor check MON. CHK

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the monitor check function of this unit. When “MON. CHK” is set to “YES”, this unit receives the information of the available video signal resolutions from the video monitor connected via HDMI and you can only select the resolutions supported by the video monitor in “HDMI RES.” (see page 99). When “MON. CHK” is set to “SKIP”, you can select any resolution in “HDMI RES.”.

Choices: **YES**, **SKIP**

■ Tuner frequency step TU (Asia and General models only)

Use this feature to set the tuner frequency step according to the frequency spacing in your area.

Choices: **AM10/FM100**, **AM9/FM50**

- Select “AM10/FM100” for North, Central and South America.
- Select “AM9/FM50” for all other areas.

■ Parameter initialization INIT

Use this feature to reset the parameters of this unit to the initial factory settings. You can select the category of parameters to be initialized.

Choices: **DSP PARAM**, **VIDEO**, **ALL**, **CANCEL**

- Select “DSP PARAM” to initialize all the parameters of the sound field programs (see page 74).
- Select “VIDEO” to initialize the parameters in “VIDEO SET” (see page 98) and “OSD SHIFT” in “DISPLAY SET” (see page 98).
- Select “ALL” to initialize all the parameters of this unit.
- Select “CANCEL” to cancel the initialization procedure.

Note

Use “INITIALIZE” in the sound field program menu to initialize the parameters of the desired program (see page 74).

Troubleshooting

Refer to the table below when this unit does not function properly. If the problem you are experiencing is not listed below or if the instruction below does not help, turn off this unit, disconnect the power cable, and contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.

■ General

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
This unit fails to turn on or enters the standby mode soon after the power is turned on.	The power cable is not connected or the plug is not completely inserted.	Connect the power cable firmly.	—
	The speaker impedance setting is incorrect.	Set the speaker impedance to match your speakers.	28
	The protection circuitry has been activated.	Make sure that all speaker wire connections on this unit and on all speakers are secure and that the wires for each connection do not touch anything other than their respective connections.	14
	This unit has been exposed to a strong external electric shock (such as lightning or strong static electricity).	Set this unit to the standby mode, disconnect the power cable, plug it back in after 30 seconds and then use this unit normally.	—
No sound.	Incorrect input or output cable connections.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	20-26
	The optimizer microphone is connected.	Disconnect the optimizer microphone.	36
	Audio input jack select is set to "HDMI", "COAX/OPT" or "ANALOG".	Set Audio input jack select to "AUTO".	44
	Audio input jack select is set to "ANALOG" while playing a source encoded in Dolby Digital or DTS.	Set Audio input jack select to "AUTO" or "COAX/OPT".	44
	No appropriate input source has been selected.	Select an appropriate input source with the INPUT selector on the front panel (or the input selector buttons on the remote control).	42, 43
	Speaker connections are not secure.	Secure the connections.	14
	The front speakers to be used have not been selected properly.	Select the front speakers by pressing (A) SPEAKERS on the front panel repeatedly.	43
	The volume is turned down.	Turn up the volume.	—
	The sound is muted.	Press (M) MUTE or (V) VOLUME +/- on the remote control to resume audio output and then adjust the volume.	45
	Signals this unit cannot reproduce are being input from a source component, such as a CD-ROM.	Play a source whose signals can be reproduced by this unit.	—
	The HDMI components connected to this unit do not support the HDCP copy protection standards.	Connect HDMI components that support the HDCP copy protection standards.	18
	"S.AUDIO" is set to "OTHER" and "HDMI" audio signals are not being played back on this unit.	Set "S.AUDIO" to "RX-V863" in "MANUAL SETUP".	101
No picture.	The output and input for the picture are connected to different types of video jacks.	Set "VIDEO CONV." to "ON" or connect your source components in the same way as you connect your video monitor to this unit.	98
	Non-standard video signals are input.		
The sound suddenly goes off.	The protection circuitry has been activated because of a short circuit, etc.	Check that the speaker impedance setting is correct.	28, 109
		Check that the speaker wires are not touching each other and then turn this unit back on.	—
	The sleep timer has turned this unit off.	Turn this unit on, and play the source again.	—
	The sound is muted.	Press (M) MUTE or (V) VOLUME +/- on the remote control to resume audio output.	45
Sound is heard from the speaker on one side only.	Incorrect cable connections.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	14
	Incorrect settings in "SP LEVEL".	Adjust the "SP LEVEL" settings.	89

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
Only the center speaker outputs substantial sound.	When playing a monaural source with a sound field program, the source signal is directed to the center channel, and the front and surround speakers output effect sounds.		
No sound is heard from the center speaker.	"CENTER SP" in "SET MENU" is set to "NONE".	Set "CENTER SP" to "SMALL" or "LARGE".	88
	One of the sound field programs (except for "7ch Stereo") has been selected.	Try another sound field program.	48
No sound is heard from the presence speakers.	The sound field programs are turned off.	Press Ⓢ STRAIGHT to turn them on.	51
	You are using a source or program combination that does not output sound from all channels.	Try another sound field program.	42
	"EXTRA SP ASSIGN" is set to a setting other than "PRESENCE".	Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "PRESENCE".	87
No sound is heard from the surround speakers.	"SUR. L/R SP" in "SET MENU" is set to "NONE".	Set "SUR. L/R SP" to "SML" or "LRG".	88
	This unit is in the "STRAIGHT" mode and a monaural source is being played back.	Press Ⓢ STRAIGHT on the front panel so that "STRAIGHT" disappears from the front panel display.	51
No sound is heard from the surround back speakers.	"SUR. L/R SP" in "SET MENU" is set to "NONE" and "SUR.B L/R SP" is automatically set to "NONE".	Set "SUR. L/R SP" and "SUR.B L/R SP" to a setting other than "NONE".	88
	"SUR.B L/R SP" in "SET MENU" is set to "NONE".	Set "SUR.B L/R SP" to a setting other than "NONE".	88
Zone 2 speaker settings are not available in "SET MENU".	"EXTRA SP ASSIGN" is set to a setting other than "ZONE2".	Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "ZONE2".	87
FRONT B speakers cannot be activated.	"EXTRA SP ASSIGN" is set to a setting other than "FRONT B".	Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "FRONT B".	87
No sound from the center, surround or surround back speakers when the FRONT B speakers are activated.	"EXTRA SP ASSIGN" is set to "ZONE B".	Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "FRONT B".	87
Presence speaker settings are not available in "SET MENU".	"EXTRA SP ASSIGN" is set to a setting other than "PRESENCE".	Set "EXTRA SP ASSIGN" to "PRESENCE".	87
No sound is heard from the subwoofer.	"LFE/BASS OUT" in "SET MENU" is set to "FRONT" when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is being played.	Set "LFE/BASS OUT" to "SWFR" or "BOTH".	87
	"LFE/BASS OUT" in "SET MENU" is set to "SWFR" or "FRONT" when a 2-channel source is being played.	Set "LFE/BASS OUT" to "BOTH".	87
	The source does not contain low-frequency signals.		
Dolby Digital or DTS sources cannot be played. (Dolby Digital or DTS indicator in the front panel display does not light up.)	The connected component is not set to output Dolby Digital or DTS digital signals.	Make an appropriate setting following the operating instructions for your component.	—
	Audio input jack select is set to "ANALOG".	Set Audio input jack select to "AUTO".	44
A humming sound is heard.	Incorrect cable connections.	Connect the audio cables firmly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	—
	No connection from the turntable to the GND terminal.	Connect the grounding cable of your turntable to the GND terminal of this unit.	23
The volume level is low while a record is being played.	The record is being played on a turntable with an MC cartridge.	Connect your turntable to this unit through an MC-head amplifier.	23

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The volume level cannot be increased, or the sound is distorted.	The component connected to the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks of this unit is turned off.	Turn on the power of the component.	—
The sound effects cannot be recorded.	It is not possible to record the sound effects with a recording component.		
A source cannot be recorded by a digital recording component connected to the DIGITAL OUTPUT jack.	The source component is not connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks of this unit.	Connect the source component to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks.	21, 23
	Some components cannot record Dolby Digital or DTS sources. (U.S.A. model only) HD Radio signals are not output at the DIGITAL OUTPUT jacks.	Connect the recording component to the analog AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.	—
A source cannot be recorded by an analog component connected to the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.	The source component is not connected to the analog AUDIO IN jacks of this unit.	Connect the source component to the analog AUDIO IN jacks.	23
	XM Satellite Radio and SIRIUS Satellite Radio signals are not output at the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks.		
The sound field parameters and some other settings of this unit cannot be changed.	"MEMORY GUARD" in "SET MENU" is set to "ON".	Set "MEMORY GUARD" to "OFF".	100
This unit does not operate properly.	The internal microcomputer has been frozen by an external electric shock (such as lightning or excessive static electricity) or by a power supply with low voltage.	Disconnect the power cable from the AC wall outlet and then plug it in again after about 30 seconds.	—
No sound is heard from the connected HDMI component.	The HDMI component does not accept the multi-channel audio signals.	Convert the multi-channel audio signals to the 2-channel audio signals at the source component such as a DVD player.	—
"CHECK SP WIRES" appears in the front panel display.	Speaker cables are short-circuited.	Make sure all speaker cables are connected correctly.	14
There is noise interference from digital or radio frequency equipment.	This unit is too close to the digital or high-frequency equipment.	Move this unit further away from such equipment.	—
The picture is disturbed.	The video source uses scrambled or encoded signals to prevent dubbing.		
This unit suddenly enters the standby mode.	The internal temperature is too high and the overheat protection circuitry has been activated.	Wait about 1 hour for this unit to cool down and then turn it back on.	—

■ HDMI

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
No picture or sound.	The number of the connected HDMI components is over the limit.	Reduce the number of the connected HDMI components.	—
	HDCP authentication failed.	Check that the connected HDMI components support the HDCP copy protection standards.	—

■ Tuner (FM/AM)

	Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
FM	FM stereo reception is noisy.	The characteristics of FM stereo broadcasts may cause this problem when the transmitter is too far away or the antenna input is poor.	Check the antenna connections.	27
			Try using a high-quality directional FM antenna.	—
			Use the manual tuning method.	53
	There is distortion, and clear reception cannot be obtained even with a good FM antenna.	There is multi-path interference.	Adjust the antenna position to eliminate multi-path interference.	—
	The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.	The signal is too weak.	Use a high-quality directional FM antenna.	—
			Use the manual tuning method.	53
	Previously preset stations can no longer be tuned into.	This unit has been disconnected for a long period.	Preset the stations again.	54
AM	The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.	The signal is weak or the antenna connections are loose.	Tighten the AM loop antenna connections and orient the antenna for the best reception.	—
			Use the manual tuning method.	53
	There are continuous crackling and hissing noises.	Noise can result from lightning, fluorescent lamps, motors, thermostats and other electrical equipment.	Use an outdoor antenna and a ground wire. This will help somewhat, but it is difficult to eliminate all noise.	—
	There are buzzing and whining noises.	A TV set is being used nearby.	Move this unit away from the TV set.	—

■ HD Radio (U.S.A. model only)

	Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
	This unit cannot receive the HD Radio signals of the selected radio station.	The radio station provides analog FM/AM radio service only.	Select other radio stations that provides the HD Radio service.	53
		Tuning mode is set to "MANUAL TUNING".	Set the tuning mode to "AUTO TUNING".	53
		The signal is too weak.	Adjust the antenna position. Use a high-quality FM/AM antenna.	— —
	This unit cannot select other audio programs than the main program.	The radio station provides an audio program only.	Select an FM HD Radio station that provides multiple audio programs.	53
	HD Radio information does not appear.	The radio station does not provide the information.	Select other radio stations that provides the HD Radio information.	53

■ XM Satellite Radio

If an operation takes longer than usual or an error occurs, one of the following messages may appear in the front panel display. In this case, read the cause and follow the corresponding remedies.

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
CHECK XM TUNER	The XM Mini-Tuner is not installed in the XM Mini-Tuner Dock or the XM Mini-Tuner dock is not connected to this unit.	Confirm the XM Mini-Tuner is fully seated in the dock and check the XM Mini-Tuner dock cable is connected to this unit.	59, 63
CHECK ANTENNA	The XM antenna is not connected to the XM Mini-Tuner Dock or the XM antenna cable has become damaged.	Check that the XM antenna is securely connected to the XM Mini-Tuner Dock and check the antenna cable for damage. Replace the XM antenna if the cable is damaged.	59
LOADING	The XM Mini-Tuner is acquiring audio or program information from the XM satellite signal. This message can also occur in weak XM signal conditions. Note that this unit may not respond to some operations while this message is displayed.	This message should disappear in a few seconds in good signal conditions. If you see this message often, reposition the XM antenna to get better signal reception. Use the "ANTENNA INFO" information in the front panel or "XM Information" screen in the video monitor to check the antenna reception level.	63
NO SIGNAL	The XM Mini-Tuner is not receiving the XM satellite signal. Something may be blocking the XM antenna's view of the satellites or the antenna is not properly aimed.	Check for antenna obstructions and reposition the XM antenna to get better signal reception. Use the "ANTENNA INFO" information in the front panel or "XM Information" screen in the video monitor to check the antenna reception level. See instructions supplied with the XM Mini-Tuner and Dock for antenna installation information.	59
OFF AIR	The XM channel you selected is not currently broadcasting.	Check back at a later time; in the mean time, select another channel.	—
CH UNAUTH	You may be attempting to tune to an XM channel that is blocked or that you cannot receive with your XM subscription package.	Consult the latest channel guide at http://www.xmradio.com/ (US residents) and http://www.xmradio.ca/ (Canadian residents) for the current list of channels. For information on receiving this channel, visit http://www.xmradio.com/ (US residents) and http://www.xmradio.ca/ (Canadian residents) or contact XM Satellite Radio at 1-800-967-2346 (US residents) and 1-877-438-9677 (Canadian residents).	60
CH UNAVAIL	The selected channel is not available. The channel may have been reassigned to a different channel number. This message may occur initially with a new XM Mini-Tuner or an XM Mini-Tuner that has not received XM's signal for an extended period.	Consult the latest channel guide at http://www.xmradio.com/ (US residents) and http://www.xmradio.ca/ (Canadian residents) for the current list of channels. For cases of a new XM Mini-Tuner or an XM Mini-Tuner that has not received XM's signal for an extended period, allow the XM Mini-Tuner to receive the XM satellite signal for at least 5 minutes and then try to select the channel again.	—
- - - -	No artist name or song title is available for this selection.	No action required.	—

■ SIRIUS Satellite Radio

If an operation takes longer than usual or an error occurs, one of the following messages may appear in the front panel display. In this case, read the cause and follow the corresponding remedies.

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
ANTENNA ERROR	The antenna is not connected to the SiriusConnect tuner properly.	Check the connection of the antenna and SiriusConnect tuner.	64
CHECK SR TUNER	The SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to the SIRIUS jack of this unit correctly.	Check the connection of the SiriusConnect tuner and this unit.	64
	The SiriusConnect tuner is not connected to the AC wall outlet.	Connect the power cable of the SiriusConnect tuner to the AC wall outlet.	64
NOT SUPPORTED	This unit does not support the connected SIRIUS Satellite Radio tuner.	Connect the SiriusConnect tuner that this unit supports.	64
ACQUIRING	The signal is too weak.	Adjust the orientation of the antenna of the SiriusConnect tuner. Use the “ANTENNA INFO” information in the front panel display or “SIRIUS Information” screen in the video monitor to check the antenna reception level.	64, 69
UPDATING	The SiriusConnect tuner is updating the channel list.	Wait until the updating is complete.	—
	The period of the subscription is end.	Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to renew the subscription.	65
F/W UPDATING	The SiriusConnect tuner is updating the firmware.	Wait until the updating is complete.	—
CALL SIRIUS (CALL 888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE)	The selected channel is not subscribed.	Contact SIRIUS Satellite Radio to subscribe the selected channel. URL: https://activate.siriusradio.com/ Phone: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (1-888-539-7474)	65
		Select another channel.	65
SUB UPDATED	The subscription information is updated.		
INVALID	The selected channel is currently out of service.	Select another channel.	65
Not Available	The operation you made is not available.		

■ Remote control

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
The remote control does not work or function properly.	Wrong distance or angle.	The remote control will function within a maximum range of 6 m (20 ft) and no more than 30 degrees off-axis from the front panel.	31
	Direct sunlight or lighting (from an inverter type of fluorescent lamp, etc.) is striking the remote control sensor of this unit.	Reposition this unit.	—
	The batteries are weak.	Replace all batteries.	—
	The operation mode selector is set incorrectly.	Set the operation mode selector correctly. When operating this unit, set it to the ⒶAMP position. When operating the component selected by the input selector button, set it to the ⒷSOURCE position. When operating the TV set in the ④DTV or ④PHONO area, set it to the ⒹTV position.	—
	The remote control code was not correctly set.	Set the remote control code correctly using “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.	104
		Try setting another code of the same manufacturer using “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.	104
	The ID code of the remote control and the remote control ID of this unit do not match.	Match the remote control ID of this unit with the corresponding remote control ID code.	110

■ iPod

Note

In case of a transmission error without a status message appearing in the front panel and in the OSD, check the connection to your iPod (see page 25).

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Loading...	This unit is in the middle of recognizing the connection with your iPod. This unit is in the middle of acquiring song lists from your iPod.		
Connect error	There is a problem with the signal path from your iPod to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect the Yamaha iPod universal dock to the DOCK terminal of this unit. Try resetting your iPod.	25 —
Unknown iPod	The iPod being used is not supported by this unit.	Only iPod (Click and Wheel), iPod nano, and iPod mini are supported.	—
iPod connected	Your iPod is properly stationed in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit, and the connection between your iPod and this unit is complete.		
Disconnected	Your iPod was removed from a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10 sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit.	Station your iPod back in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-10 sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit.	25
Unable to play	This unit cannot play back the songs currently stored on your iPod.	Check that the songs currently stored on your iPod are playable. Store some other playable music files on your iPod.	— —

■ Bluetooth

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Searching...	The Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth component is in the middle of the pairing. The Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth component is in the middle of establishing the connection.		
Completed	The pairing is completed.		
Canceled	The pairing is canceled.		
BT connected	The connection between the Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) and the Bluetooth component is established.		
Disconnected	The Bluetooth component is disconnected from the Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately).		
No BT adapter	The Bluetooth adapter is not connected to the DOCK terminal.	Connect the Yamaha Bluetooth adapter (such as YBA-10, sold separately) to the DOCK terminal.	25

■ AUTO SETUP

Before AUTO SETUP

Error message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Connect MIC!	Optimizer microphone is not connected.	Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.	32
Unplug HP!	Headphones are connected.	Unplug the headphones.	—
Memory Guard!	The parameters of this unit are protected.	Set "MEMORY GUARD" to "OFF".	100

During AUTO SETUP

Error message	Cause	Remedy	See page
E-1:NO FRONT SP	Front L/R channel signals are not detected.	Check the front L/R speaker connections.	14
E-2:NO SUR SP	A surround channel signal is not detected.	Check the surround speaker connections.	14
E-3:NO PRNS SP	A presence channel signal is not detected.	Check the presence speaker connections.	14
E-4:SBR->SBL	Only a right surround back channel signal is detected.	Connect the surround back speaker to the LEFT SURROUND BACK SPEAKERS terminal if you only have one surround back speaker.	14
E-5:NOISY	Background noise is too loud.	Try running "AUTO SETUP" in a quiet environment.	—
		Turn off noisy electric equipment like air conditioners or move them away from the optimizer microphone.	—
E-6:CHECK SUR.	Surround back speakers are connected, though surround L/R speakers are not.	Connect surround speakers when you use surround back speakers.	14
E-7:NO MIC	The optimizer microphone was unplugged during the "AUTO SETUP" procedure.	Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.	32
E-8:NO SIGNAL	The optimizer microphone does not detect test tones.	Check the microphone setting.	32
		Check the speaker connections and placement.	14
E-9:USER CANCEL	The "AUTO SETUP" procedure was cancelled due to user activity.	Run "AUTO SETUP" again.	32
E-10:INTERNAL ERROR	An internal error occurred.	Run "AUTO SETUP" again.	32

After AUTO SETUP

Warning message	Cause	Remedy	See page
W-1:OUT OF PHASE	Speaker polarity is not correct. This message may appear depending on the speakers even when the speakers are connected correctly.	Check the speaker connections for proper polarity (+ or -).	14
W-2:OVER 24m (80ft)	The distance between the speaker and the listening position is over 24 m (80 ft).	Bring the speaker closer to the listening position.	—
W-3:LEVEL ERROR	The difference of volume level among speakers is excessive.	Readjust the speaker installation so that all speakers are set in locations with similar conditions.	—
		Check the speaker connections.	14
		Use speakers of similar quality.	—
		When “SWFR: TOO LOUD” or “SWFR: TOO LOW” appears in the result screen, the output volume of the subwoofer.	32
W-4:CHECK PRNS	“EXTRA SP ASSIGN” is set to “PRESENCE”, though the presence channel signals are not detected.	Check the presence speaker connections.	14
		Set “EXTRA SP ASSIGN” to a setting other than “PRESENCE”.	33

Notes

- If the “ERROR” or “WARNING” screens appears, check the cause of the problem, then run “AUTO SETUP” again.
- If a warning message “W-1”, “W-2”, or “W-3” appears, corrections are made, but they may not be optimal.
- If an error message “E-10” occurs repeatedly, contact a qualified Yamaha service center.

Resetting the system

Use this feature to reset all the parameters of this unit to the initial factory settings.

Notes

- This procedure completely resets all the parameters of this unit including the “SET MENU” parameters.
- The initial factory settings are activated next time you turn on this unit.



To cancel the initialization procedure at any time without making any changes, press **⓪SYSTEM OFF** on the front panel.

1 Press **⓪SYSTEM OFF on the front panel to set this unit to the standby mode.**

2 Press and hold **ⓂTONE CONTROL and then press **ⓀMAIN ZONE ON/OFF** to turn on this unit.**

This unit turns on, and the advanced setup menu appears in the front panel display.



3 Rotate the **ⓃPROGRAM selector to select “INIT”.**

4 Press **ⓂTONE CONTROL repeatedly to select “ALL”.**



Select “CANCEL” to cancel the initialization procedure without making any changes.

5 Press **⓪SYSTEM OFF to confirm your selection and set this unit to the standby mode.**

■ Audio and video synchronization (lip sync)

Lip sync, an abbreviation for lip synchronization, is a technical term that involves both a problem and a capability of maintaining audio and video signals synchronized during post-production and transmission. Whereas the audio and video latency requires complex end-user adjustments, HDMI version 1.3 incorporates an automatic audio and video syncing capability that allows devices to perform this synchronization automatically and accurately without user interaction.

■ Bi-amplification connection

A bi-amplification connection uses two amplifiers for a speaker. One amplifier is connected to the woofer section of a loudspeaker while the other is connected to the combined mid and tweeter section. With this arrangement each amplifier operates over a restricted frequency range. This restricted range presents each amplifier with a much simpler job and each amplifier is less likely to influence the sound in some way. The internal crossover of the speaker consists of a LPF (low pass filter) and a HPF (high pass filter). As its name implies, the LPF passes frequencies below a cutoff and rejects frequencies above the cutoff frequency. Likewise, the HPF passes frequencies above its cutoff.

■ Component video signal

With the component video signal system, the video signal is separated into the Y signal for the luminance and the Pb and Pr signals for the chrominance. Color can be reproduced more faithfully with this system because each of these signals is independent. The component signal is also called the “color difference signal” because the luminance signal is subtracted from the color signal. A monitor with component input jacks is required in order to output component signals.

■ Composite video signal

With the composite video signal system, the video signal is composed of three basic elements of a video picture: color, brightness and synchronization data. A composite video jack on a video component transmits these three elements combined.

■ Deep Color

Deep Color refers to the use of various color depths in displays, up from the 24-bit depths in previous versions of the HDMI specification. This extra bit depth allows HDTVs and other displays go from millions of colors to billions of colors and eliminate on-screen color banding for smooth tonal transitions and subtle gradations between colors. The increased contrast ratio can represent many times more shades of gray between black and white. Also Deep Color increases the number of available colors within the boundaries defined by the RGB or YCbCr color space.

■ Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital surround sound system that gives you completely independent multi-channel audio. With 3 front channels (front L/R and center), and 2 surround stereo channels, Dolby Digital provides 5 full-range audio channels. With an additional channel especially for bass effects, called LFE (Low Frequency Effect), the system has a total of 5.1-channels (LFE is counted as 0.1 channel). By using 2-channel stereo for the surround speakers, more accurate moving sound effects and surround sound environment are possible than with Dolby Surround. The wide dynamic range from maximum to minimum volume reproduced by the 5 full-range channels and the precise sound orientation generated using digital sound processing provide listeners with unprecedented excitement and realism. With this unit, any sound environment from monaural up to a 5.1-channel configuration can be freely selected for your enjoyment.

■ Dolby Digital EX

Dolby Digital EX creates 6 full-bandwidth output channels from 5.1-channel sources. This is done using a matrix decoder that derives 3 surround channels from the 2 in the original recording. For the best results, Dolby Digital EX should be used with movie sound tracks recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX. With this additional channel, you can experience more dynamic and realistic moving sound especially with scenes with “fly-over” and “fly-around” effects.

■ Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an advanced audio technology developed for high-definition programming and media including HD broadcasts, HD DVD, and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for HD DVD and as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers multichannel sound with discrete channel output. Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps, Dolby Digital Plus can carry up to 7.1 discrete audio channels simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby Digital Plus also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate Dolby Digital.

■ Dolby Pro Logic II

Dolby Pro Logic II is an improved technique used to decode vast numbers of existing Dolby Surround sources. This new technology enables a discrete 5-channel playback with 2 front left and right channels, 1 center channel, and 2 surround left and right channels instead of only 1 surround channel for conventional Pro Logic technology. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources and “Game mode” for game sources.

■ Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a new technology enabling discrete multi-channel playback from 2-channel or multi-channel sources. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources (for 2-channel sources only) and “Game mode” for game sources.

■ Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround uses a 4-channel analog recording system to reproduce realistic and dynamic sound effects: 2 front left and right channels (stereo), a center channel for dialog (monaural), and a surround channel for special sound effects (monaural). The surround channel reproduces sound within a narrow frequency range. Dolby Surround is widely used with nearly all video tapes and laser discs, and in many TV and cable broadcasts as well. The Dolby Pro Logic decoder built into this unit employs a digital signal processing system that automatically stabilizes the volume on each channel to enhance moving sound effects and directionality.

■ Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for HD DVD and as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps, Dolby TrueHD can carry up to 8 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby TrueHD also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems and retains the metadata capability of Dolby Digital, allowing dialog normalization and dynamic range control.

■ DSD

Direct Stream Digital (DSD) technology stores audio signals on digital storage media, such as Super Audio CDs. Using DSD, signals are stored as single bit values at a high-frequency sampling rate of 2.8224 MHz, while noise shaping and oversampling are used to reduce distortion, a common occurrence with very high quantization of audio signals. Due to the high sampling rate, better audio quality can be achieved than that offered by the PCM format used for normal audio CDs.

■ DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 offers an unprecedented level of audio quality for multi-channel sound on DVD video, and is fully backward-compatible with all DTS decoders. “96” refers to a 96 kHz sampling rate compared to the typical 48 kHz sampling rate. “24” refers to 24-bit word length. DTS 96/24 offers sound quality transparent to the original 96/24 master, and 96/24 5.1-channel sound with full-quality full-motion video for music programs and motion picture soundtracks on DVD video.

■ DTS Digital Surround

DTS digital surround was developed to replace the analog soundtracks of movies with a 6.1-channel digital sound track, and is now rapidly gaining popularity in movie theaters around the world. DTS, Inc. has developed a home theater system so that you can enjoy the depth of sound and natural spatial representation of DTS digital surround in your home. This system produces practically distortion-free 6.1-channel sound (technically, front left and right, center, surround left and right, and LFE 0.1 (subwoofer) channels for a total of 5.1 channels). This unit incorporates a DTS-ES decoder that enables 6.1-channel reproduction by adding the surround back channel to the existing 5.1-channel format.

■ DTS Express

DTS Express is an advanced audio technology for the optional feature on Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD, which offers high-quality, low bit rate audio optimized for network streaming, and Internet applications. DTS Express is used for the Secondary Audio feature of Blu-ray Disc or the Sub Audio feature of HD DVD. These features deliver audio commentaries (for example, the additional commentaries made by the director of a film) on demand by the users via the Internet, etc. DTS Express signals are mixed down with the main audio stream on the player component, and the component sends the mixed audio stream to the AV receivers/amplifiers via digital coaxial, digital optical, or analog connections.

■ DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an high resolution audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for both HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is virtually indistinguishable from the original, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 3.0 Mbps for HD DVD and 6.0 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

■ DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for both HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps for HD DVD and up to 24.5 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD Master Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD Master Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

■ HDMI

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is the first industry-supported, uncompressed, all-digital audio/video interface. Providing an interface between any source (such as a set-top box or AV receiver) and an audio/video monitor (such as a digital television), HDMI supports standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multi-channel digital audio using a single cable. HDMI transmits all ATSC HDTV standards and supports 8-channel digital audio, with bandwidth to spare to accommodate future enhancements and requirements. When used in combination with HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), HDMI provides a secure audio/video interface that meets the security requirements of content providers and system operators. For further information on HDMI, visit the HDMI website at <http://www.hdmi.org>.

■ LFE 0.1 channel

This channel reproduces low-frequency signals. The frequency range of this channel is from 20 Hz to 120 Hz. This channel is counted as 0.1 because it only enforces a low-frequency range compared to the full-range reproduced by the other 5/6 channels in Dolby Digital or DTS 5.1/6.1-channel systems.

■ Neo:6

Neo:6 decodes the conventional 2-channel sources for 6-channel playback by the specific decoder. It enables playback with the full-range channels with higher separation just like digital discrete signal playback. There are two modes available: "Music mode" for music sources and "Cinema mode" for movie sources.

■ Neural Surround

Neural Surround™ represents the latest advancement in surround technology and has been adopted by XM Satellite Radio for digital radio broadcast of surround recordings and live events in surround sound. Neural Surround™ employs psychoacoustic frequency domain processing which allows delivery of a more detailed sound stage with superior channel separation and localization of audio elements. System playback is scalable from 5.1 to 7.1 multi-channel surround playback.

■ PCM (Linear PCM)

Linear PCM is a signal format under which an analog audio signal is digitized, recorded and transmitted without using any compression. This is used as a method of recording CDs and DVD audio. The PCM system uses a technique for sampling the size of the analog signal per very small unit of time. Standing for "Pulse Code Modulation", the analog signal is encoded as pulses and then modulated for recording.

■ Sampling frequency and number of quantized bits

When digitizing an analog audio signal, the number of times the signal is sampled per second is called the sampling frequency, while the degree of fineness when converting the sound level into a numeric value is called the number of quantized bits. The range of rates that can be played back is determined based on the sampling rate, while the dynamic range representing the sound level difference is determined by the number of quantized bits. In principle, the higher the sampling frequency, the wider the range of frequencies that can be played back, and the higher the number of quantized bits, the more finely the sound level can be reproduced.

■ SRS CS II (SRS Circle Surround II)

SRS CS II (SRS Circle Surround II) is a high-performance 6.1 channel matrix surround sound decoding system. It is the next-generation of the original SRS Circle Surround technology, incorporating powerful industry-first features including the dialog clarity enhancement technology and added cinema-like bass to the front channels and subwoofer.

■ S-video signal

With the S-video signal system, the video signal normally transmitted using a pin cable is separated and transmitted as the Y signal for the luminance and the C signal for the chrominance through the S-video cable. Using the S VIDEO jack eliminates video signal transmission loss and allows recording and playback of even more beautiful images.

■ "x.v.Color"

A color space standard supported by HDMI version 1.3. It is a more extensive color space than sRGB, and allows the expression of colors that could not be expressed before. While remaining compatible with the color gamut of sRGB standards, "x.v.Color" expands the color space and can thus produce more vivid, natural images. It is particularly effective for still pictures and computer graphics.

Sound field program information

■ Elements of a sound field

What really creates the rich, full tones of a live instrument are the multiple reflections from the walls of the room. In addition to making the sound live, these reflections enable us to tell where the player is situated as well as the size and shape of the room in which we are sitting.

There are two distinct types of sound reflections that combine to make up the sound field in addition to the direct sound coming straight to our ears from the player's instrument.

Early reflections

Reflected sounds reach our ears extremely rapidly (50 ms to 100 ms after the direct sound), after reflecting from one surface only (for example, from a wall or the ceiling). Early reflections actually add clarity to the direct sound.

Reverberations

These are caused by reflections from more than one surface (for example, from the walls, and the ceiling) so numerous that they merge together to form a continuous sonic afterglow. They are non-directional and lessen the clarity of the direct sound.

Direct sound, early reflections and subsequent reverberations taken together help us to determine the subjective size and shape of the room, and it is this information that the digital sound field processor reproduces in order to create sound fields.

If you could create the appropriate early reflections and subsequent reverberations in your listening room, you would be able to create your own listening environment. The acoustics in your room could be changed to those of a concert hall, a dance floor, or a room with virtually any size at all. This ability to create sound fields at will is exactly what Yamaha has done with the digital sound field processor.

■ CINEMA DSP

Since the Dolby Surround and DTS systems were originally designed for use in movie theaters, their effect is best felt in a theater having many speakers designed for acoustic effects. Since home conditions, such as room size, wall material, number of speakers, and so on, can differ so widely, it is inevitable that there are differences in the sound heard. Based on a wealth of actually measured data, Yamaha CINEMA DSP uses Yamaha original sound field technology to combine Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Digital and DTS systems to provide the audiovisual experience of a movie theater in the listening room of your own home.

■ SILENT CINEMA

Yamaha has developed a natural, realistic sound effect DSP algorithm for headphones. Parameters for headphones have been set for each sound field so that accurate representations of all the sound field programs can be enjoyed on headphones.

■ Virtual CINEMA DSP

Yamaha has developed a Virtual CINEMA DSP algorithm that allows you to enjoy DSP sound field surround effects even without any surround speakers by using virtual surround speakers. It is even possible to enjoy Virtual CINEMA DSP using a minimal two-speaker system that does not include a center speaker.

■ Compressed Music Enhancer

The Compressed Music Enhancer feature of this unit enhances your listening experience by regenerating the missing harmonics in a compression artifact. As a result, flattened complexity due to the loss of high-frequency fidelity as well as lack of bass due to the loss of low-frequency bass is compensated, providing improved performance of the overall sound system.

Specifications

AUDIO SECTION

- Minimum RMS Output Power for Front, Center, Surround, Surround back
20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.06% THD, 8 Ω 105 W
- Dynamic Power (IHF)
Front L/R, 8/6/4/2 Ω 140/175/205/250 W
- Maximum Useful Output Power (JEITA)
[Asia, General, China and Korea models]
1 kHz, 10% THD, 8 Ω 145 W
- Maximum Output Power [U.K., Europe, Russia and Asia models]
Speaker impedance setting: 8 Ω , 1 kHz, 0.7% THD, 4 Ω 155 W
- Dynamic Headroom [U.S.A. and Canada models]
8 Ω 1.25 dB
- IEC Output Power [U.K., Europe, Russia and Asia models]
Front L/R, 1 kHz, 0.06% THD, 8 Ω 115 W
- Damping Factor (IHF)
Front L/R, SPEAKERS A, 20 Hz to 20 kHz, 8 Ω 120 or more
- Input Sensitivity/Input Impedance
PHONO (MM) 3.5 mV/47 k Ω
CD, etc. 200 mV/47 k Ω
MULTI CH INPUT 200 mV/47 k Ω
- Maximum Input Voltage
PHONO (MM)
1 kHz, 0.1% THD 60 mV or more
CD, etc.
Effect On, 1 kHz, 0.5% THD 2.3 V or more
- Rated Output Voltage/Output Impedance
OUT (REC) 200 mV/1.2 k Ω
PRE OUT 1.0 V/1.2 k Ω
SUBWOOFER (2ch Stereo, FRONT SP: SMALL)
..... 1.0 V/1.2 k Ω
ZONE 2 OUT 200 mV/1.2 k Ω
- Headphone Jack Rated Output/Impedance
CD, etc. (1 kHz, 50 mV, 8 Ω) 150 mV/100 Ω
- Frequency Response
CD to Front L/R, 10 Hz to 100 kHz
..... +0/-3 dB
- RIAA Equalization Deviation
PHONO (MM) 0 $\pm$ 0.5 dB
- Total Harmonic Distortion
PHONO (MM) to OUT (REC)
20 Hz to 20 kHz, 1 V 0.02% or less
CD, etc. to Front L/R
2ch Stereo, 20 Hz to 20 kHz, 50 W, 8 Ω 0.06% or less
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF-A Network)
PHONO (MM, 5 mV) to OUT (REC)
[Australia, U.K., Europe, Russia, Korea and Asia models]
..... 81 dB or more
[Other models] 86 dB or more
CD, etc. (Effect Off, 250 mV) to Front L/R
..... 100 dB or more
- Residual Noise (IHF-A Network)
Front L/R 150 μ V or less
- Channel Separation (1 kHz/10 kHz)
PHONO (shortened) to Front L/R 60 dB/55 dB or more
CD, etc. (5.1 k Ω shortened) to Front L/R
..... 60 dB/45 dB or more

- Volume Control MUTE/-80 dB to 16.5 dB
- Tone Control (Front L/R)
BASS Boost/Cut $\pm$ 10 dB/50 Hz
BASS Turnover Frequency 350 Hz
TREBLE Boost/Cut $\pm$ 10 dB/20 kHz
TREBLE Turnover Frequency 3.5 kHz
- Filter Characteristics (fc=40/60/80/90/100/110/120/160/200 Hz)
H.P.F.
(FRONT SP, CENTER SP, SUR. L/R SP, SUR.B L/R SP:
SMALL/SML) 12 dB/oct.
L.P.F. (Subwoofer) 24 dB/oct.

VIDEO SECTION

- Video Format (Gray Back)
[U.S.A., Canada, General and Korea models] NTSC
[U.K., Europe, Russia, Australia, Asia and China models]
..... PAL
- Video Format (Video Conversion) NTSC/PAL
- Signal Level
Composite 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
S-video 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.286 Vp-p/75 Ω (C)
Component 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (Pb/P_r)
- Maximum Input Level (Video Conversion Off)
..... 1.5 Vp-p or more
- Signal to Noise Ratio
..... 50 dB or more
- Frequency Response (MONITOR OUT)
Component (Video Conversion Off)
..... 5 Hz to 100 MHz, -3 dB

FM SECTION

- Tuning Range
[U.S.A. and Canada models] 87.5 to 107.9 MHz
[Asia and General models] 87.5/87.50 to 108.0/108.00 MHz
[Other models] 87.50 to 108.00 MHz
- 50 dB Quieting Sensitivity (IHF)
1 kHz, 100% MOD., Mono 2.8 μ V (20.2 dBf)
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF)
Mono/Stereo 73 dB/70 dB
HD Radio (U.S.A. model) 80 dB
- Harmonic Distortion (1 kHz)
Mono/Stereo 0.5%
HD Radio (U.S.A. model) 0.03%
- Antenna Input (unbalanced) 75 Ω

AM SECTION

- Tuning Range
[U.S.A. and Canada models] 530 to 1710 kHz
[Asia and General models] 530/531 to 1710/1611 kHz
[Other models] 531 to 1611 kHz

GENERAL

- Power Supply
 - [U.S.A. and Canada models] AC 120 V, 60 Hz
 - [General model]
 - AC 110/120/220/230–240 V, 50/60 Hz
 - [Asia model]
 - AC 220/230–240 V, 50/60 Hz
 - [China model] AC 220 V, 50 Hz
 - [Korea model] AC 220 V, 60 Hz
 - [Australia model] AC 240 V, 50 Hz
 - [U.K., Europe, and Russia models] AC 230 V, 50 Hz
- Power Consumption
 - [U.S.A. and Canada models] 400 W/500 VA
 - [Other models] 440 W
- Standby Power Consumption
 - [U.S.A. and Canada models] 0.8 W or less
 - [Other models] 0.1 W or less
- Maximum Power Consumption [General model only]
 - 6ch, 10% THD 850 W
- AC Outlets
 - [U.S.A., Canada, and China models]
 - 2 (Total 100 W maximum)
 - [Asia, General, Europe, and Russia models]
 - 2 (Total 50 W maximum)
 - [Australia and U.K. models] 1 (100 W maximum)
- Dimensions (W x H x D) 435 x 171 x 393 mm
(17-1/8 x 6-3/4 x 15-1/2 in)
- Weight 11.9 kg (26 lbs 4 oz)

* Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Index

■ Numerics

1 BASIC MENU, Manual setup	82
2 VOLUME MENU, Manual setup	83
2ch STEREO, Sound field program	50
3 SOUND MENU, Manual setup	83
4 INPUT MENU, Manual setup	84
5 OPTION MENU, Manual setup	84
7ch Enhancer, Sound field program	50
7ch STEREO, Sound field program	50
96/24 indicator	30

■ A

A)DISPLAY SET, Option menu	98
A)EQUALIZER, Sound menu	92
A)SPEAKER SET, Basic menu	87
AC OUTLET(S) (SWITCHED)	28
ACQUIRING, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message	118
Action Game, Sound field program	49
ADAPTIVE DRC indicator	30
ADAPTIVE DRC, Volume menu	91
ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL, Volume menu	91
Adaptive DSP level, Volume menu	91
Adaptive dynamic range control, Volume menu	91
Advanced setup	109
Advanced sound configurations	74
Adventure, Sound field program	50
ALL CH SEARCH, SIRIUS tuning	66
ALL CH SEARCH, XM tuning	61
All Channel Search mode, XM tuning	61, 66
All remote control codes resetting	104
AM antenna connection	27
AM tuning	53
Amplifier function OSD display time, Display settings	98
ANTENNA ERROR, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message	118
Audio and video synchronization, Sound menu	94
Audio cable plugs	17
Audio components connection	23
Audio information	46
Audio input jacks selection	44
AUDIO jacks	17
Audio jacks	17
AUDIO SELECT	44
AUDIO SELECT, Initial configuration	100
Audio select, Initial configuration	100
Audio signal flow	19
Auto delay, Lip sync	94

AUTO SETUP	32, 82
Auto setup	82
AUTO SETUP, Troubleshooting	120
AUTO TUNING	53
AUTO, Lip sync	94
Automatic tuning mode, FM/AM tuning	53
Available decoders with Sound field programs	79

■ B

B)LFE LEVEL, Sound menu	93
B)SP LEVEL, Basic menu	89
B)VIDEO SET, Option menu	98
BASIC MENU, Manual setup	87
Basic menu, Manual setup	82
Basic SIRIUS Satellite Radio operation	65
Bass cross over, Speaker settings	89
BGV, Input menu	97
BI-AMP, Advanced setup	112
Bi-Amplifier, Advanced setup	112
Bluetooth adapter connection	25
Bluetooth component playback	72
Bluetooth component use	72
Bluetooth, Troubleshooting	119
BT connected, Bluetooth status message	119

■ C

C)DYNAMIC RANGE, Sound menu	93
C)MEMORY GUARD, Option menu	100
C)SP DISTANCE, Basic menu	90
C. IMAGE, Decoder parameter	81
Cable plugs	17
CALL SIRIUS, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message	118
Canceled, Troubleshooting	119
CAT SEARCH, SIRIUS tuning	66
CAT SEARCH, XM tuning	61
Category Search mode, SIRIUS tuning	66
CD player connection	23
Cellar Club, Sound field program	49
CENTER PRE OUT jack connection	24
CENTER SP, Speaker settings	88
Center speaker level, Sound field parameter	79
Center speaker, Speaker settings	88
CENTER WIDTH, Decoder parameter	81
CH UNAUTH, XM Satellite Radio status message	117
CH UNAVAIL, XM Satellite Radio status message	117
Chamber, Sound field program	48

Charge on standby, Input menu	96
CHECK ANTENNA, XM Satellite Radio status message	117
CHECK PRNS, Automatic setup warning message	121
CHECK SR TUNER, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message	118
CHECK SUR., Automatic setup error message	120
CHECK XM TUNER, XM Satellite Radio status message	117
CINEMA DSP indicator	31
CLASSICAL, Sound field category	48
Completed, Bluetooth status message	119
COMPONENT VIDEO jacks	17
Compressed Music Enhancer	50
Connect error, iPod status message ...	119
Connect MIC!, Automatic setup error message	120
Connection, AM antenna connection	27
Connection, audio components	23
Connection, Bluetooth adapter	25
Connection, CD player	23
Connection, CENTER PRE OUT jack	24
Connection, DVD player	21
Connection, DVD recorder	22
Connection, External amplifier	24
Connection, external decoder	25
Connection, FM antenna	27
Connection, FRONT PRE OUT jacks	24
Connection, iPod universal dock	25
Connection, Multi-format player	25
Connection, Power cable	28
Connection, projector	20
Connection, PVR	22
Connection, set-top boxes	22
Connection, SiriusConnect tuner	64
Connection, speaker cable	16
Connection, SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack	24
Connection, SUR.BACK PRE OUT jacks	24
Connection, SURROUND PRE OUT jacks	24
Connection, Turntable	23
Connection, TV monitor	20
Connection, VCR	22
Connection, XM Mini-Tuner Dock	59
CROSS OVER, Speaker settings	89
CSII Cinema, Decoder type	80
CSII Music, Decoder type	80
CT LEVEL, Sound field parameter	79
Current status display	44

D

D)INIT. CONFIG, Option menu	100
D)LIPSYNC, Sound menu	94
D)TEST TONE, Basic menu	90
Decoder descriptions	80
Decoder indicators	30
DECODER MODE,	
Initial configuration	100
Decoder mode,	
Initial configuration	100
DECODER MODE, Input menu	96
Decoder mode, Input menu	96
Decoder selection	79
DEVICE OVER,	
HDMI error message	46
DIALG.LIFT,	
Sound field parameter	75
Dialogue lift,	
Sound field parameter	75
DIGITAL COAXIAL jacks	17
DIGITAL OPTICAL jacks	17
DIMENSION, Decoder parameter	81
DIMMER, Display settings	98
Dimmer, Display settings	98
Direct number access mode,	
SIRIUS tuning	66
Direct number access mode,	
XM tuning	61
DIRECT, Sound field parameter	79
Disconnected,	
Bluetooth status message	119
Disconnected,	
iPod status message	119
Display settings, Option menu	98
Displaying HD Radio information	58
DIST, Auto setup result	34
DOCK indicator	30
Drama, Sound field program	50
DSP effect sound level,	
Sound field parameter	75
DSP indicators	31
DSP LEVEL,	
Sound field parameter	75
DVD player connection	21
DVD recorder connection	22
Dynamic range, Sound menu	93

E

E)EXTD SUR., Sound menu	94
E)HDMI SET, Option menu	101
E-1:NO FRONT SP, Automatic setup	
error message	120
E-10:INTERNAL ERROR, Automatic	
setup error message	120
E-2:NO SUR SP, Automatic setup	
error message	120
E-3:NO PRNS SP, Automatic setup error	
message	120
E-4:SBR->SBL, Automatic setup error	
message	120
E-5:NOISY, Automatic setup error	
message	120
E-6:CHECK SUR., Automatic setup error	
message	120

E-7:NO MIC, Automatic setup error	
message	120
E-8:NO SIGNAL, Automatic setup error	
message	120
E-9:USER CANCEL, Automatic setup	
error message	120
EFFECT LEVEL,	
Sound field parameter	79
ENHANCER indicator	30
ENTERTAINMENT,	
Sound field category	49
EQ TYPE SELECT, Equalizer	92
EQ, Auto setup parameter	33
Equalizer type select, Equalizer	92
Equalizer, Sound menu	92
EXTD SUR., Initial configuration	100
Extended surround,	
Initial configuration	100
Extended surround, Sound menu	94
External amplifier connection	24
External decoder connection	25
EXTRA SP ASSIGN, Auto setup	
parameter	33
EXTRA SP ASSIGN,	
Speaker settings	87
Extra speaker assignment,	
Auto setup parameter	33
Extra speaker assignment,	
Speaker settings	87

F

F)ZONE2 SET, Option menu	101
F/W UPDATING, SIRIUS Satellite Radio	
status message	118
FL SCROLL, Display settings	98
FM antenna	27
FM antenna connection	27
FM tuning	53
FOCUS	81
Front input, Input menu	97
Front panel display	30
Front panel display scroll,	
Display settings	98
FRONT PRE OUT jack	24
FRONT SP, Speaker settings	88
Front speaker set selection	43
Front speakers, Speaker settings	88
FRONT, Input menu	97

G

GEQ, Equalizer	92
Graphic equalizer, Equalizer	92

H

Hall in Munich,	
Sound field program	48
Hall in Vienna,	
Sound field program	48
HD Radio	57
HD Radio information display	58
HD Radio, Troubleshooting	116
HDCP ERROR,	
HDMI error message	46

HDMI	18
HDMI ASPECT	99
HDMI aspect ratio	99
HDMI AUTO, Lip sync	94
HDMI auto, Lip sync	94
HDMI indicator	30
HDMI RES., Video settings	99
HDMI resolution, Video settings	99
HDMI set, Option menu	101
HDMI, troubleshooting	115
HEADPHONE, Dynamic range	93
HEADPHONE,	
Low frequency effect level	93
Headphones	45
Headphones indicator	30
Headphones, Dynamic range	93
Headphones,	
Low frequency effect level	93

I

I/O ASSIGNMENT, Input menu	95
Infrared window	31
INI.VOL., Zone 2 settings	101
INIT, Advanced setup	112
INIT.DLY,	
Sound field parameter	76
INIT.VOL., Volume menu	91
Initial configuration,	
Option menu	100
Initial delay,	
Sound field parameter	76
INTERNAL ERROR, Automatic setup	
error message	120
Initial volume, Volume menu	91
INPUT CH, Input menu	97
Input channel and speaker	
indicators	31
Input channel indicators	31
Input channels, Input menu	97
INPUT MENU, Manual setup	95
Input menu, Manual setup	84
INPUT RENAME, Input menu	96
Input rename, Input menu	96
Input signal indicators	30
Input source indicators	30
Input source information display	46
Input/output assignment,	
Input menu	95
INVALID, SIRIUS Satellite Radio	
status message	118
iPod universal dock connection	25
iPod use	70
iPod, Troubleshooting	119

J

Jacks	17
-------------	----

L

LEVEL ERROR, Automatic setup	
warning message	121
LFE/BASS OUT, Speaker settings	87
LFE/Bass out, Speaker settings	87
Lip Sync, Sound menu	94

- LIVE/CLUB,
Sound field category 49
- LIVENESS, Sound field parameter 77
- Liveness, Sound field parameter 77
- LOADING, XM Satellite Radio status
message 117
- Loading..., iPod status message 119
- Low-frequency effect level,
Sound menu 93
- LVL, Auto setup result 34
- M**
- Manual delay, Lip sync 94
- MANUAL SETUP 82
- Manual setup 82
- MANUAL TUNING 53
- Manual tuning mode,
FM/AM tuning 53
- MANUAL, Lip sync 94
- MAX VOL., Volume menu 91
- MAX VOL., Zone 2 settings 101
- Maximum volume, Volume menu 91
- Memory Guard!, Automatic setup
error message 120
- Memory guard, Option menu 100
- MON.CHK, Advanced setup 112
- Monitor check, Advanced setup 112
- Mono Movie, Sound field program 50
- MOVIE, Sound field category 49
- MULTI CH INPUT component
selection 43
- MULTI CH INPUT jacks 25
- Multi-channel input BGV, Input menu,
BGV, Input menu 97
- Multi-channel source playback
with headphones 51
- Multi-format player connection 25
- Multi-information display 31
- MULTI-ZONE Configuration 106
- MUSIC ENHANCER,
Sound field category 50
- Music Video,
Sound field program 49
- MUTE 45
- MUTE indicator 30
- Muting 45
- N**
- Neo:6 Cinema, Decoder type 79, 80
- Neo:6 Music, Decoder type 80
- Neural Sur., Decoder type 80
- No BT Adapter, Bluetooth status
message 119
- NO FRONT SP, Automatic setup
error message 120
- NO MIC, Automatic setup
error message 120
- NO PRNS SP, Automatic setup
error message 120
- NO SIGNAL, Automatic setup
error message 120
- NO SIGNAL, XM Satellite Radio
status message 117
- NO SUR SP, Automatic setup
error message 120
- NOISY, Automatic setup
error message 120
- Not Available, SIRIUS Satellite Radio
status message 118
- NOT SUPPORTED, SIRIUS Satellite
Radio status message 118
- Number of speakers,
Auto setup result 34
- O**
- OFF AIR, XM Satellite Radio status
message 117
- Operation mode selector 31
- OPTIMIZER MIC jack 32
- OPTION MENU, Manual setup 98
- Option menu, Manual setup 84
- OSD SHIFT, Display settings 98
- OSD shift, Display settings 98
- OSD-AMP, Display settings 98
- OSD-SOURCE, Display settings 98
- Other components controlling
by remote control 103
- Other components controlling,
Remote control 103
- OUT OF PHASE, Automatic setup
warning message 121
- Out of Res., HDMI message 46
- OVER 24m (80ft), Automatic setup
warning message 121
- P**
- P.INIT.DLY,
Sound field parameter 76
- P.ROOM SIZE,
Sound field parameter 77
- Pairing, Bluetooth operation 72
- PANORAMA, Decoder parameter 81
- Parameter initialization,
Advanced setup 112
- Parametric equalizer type,
Auto setup parameter 33
- Parental Lock 67
- Parental Lock 67
- PARENTAL LOCK, Input menu 68
- PHONES jack 45
- PL LEVEL, Sound field parameter 79
- Playing video sources
in the background 45
- PLII Game, Decoder type 80
- PLII Movie, Decoder type 79, 80
- PLII Music, Decoder type 80
- PLIIX Game, Decoder type 80
- PLIIX Movie, Decoder type 79, 80
- PLIIX Music, Decoder type 80
- Power cable connection 28
- PR LEVEL,
Sound field parameter 79
- Presence left speaker level,
Sound field parameter 79
- Presence right speaker level,
Sound field parameter 79
- Presence sound field initial delay, Sound
field parameter 76
- Presence sound field room size, Sound
field parameter 77
- Presence speaker indicators 31
- Presence speaker using 13
- Preset channel setting,
XM tuning 62, 67
- Preset SCENE templates 39
- Preset Search mode,
SIRIUS tuning 66
- Preset Search mode, XM tuning 61
- PRESET SEARCH, SIRIUS tuning 66
- PRESET SEARCH, XM tuning 61
- PRESET TUNING 53
- Preset tuning mode,
FM/AM tuning 53
- Pro Logic, Decoder type 80
- Projector connection 20
- Pure Direct 52
- Pure hi-fi sound 52
- PVR connection 22
- R**
- Rear panel 10
- REMOTE AMP, Advanced setup 110
- Remote control AMP ID,
Advanced setup 110
- Remote control code
default settings 104
- Remote control codes iii
- Remote control codes setting 104
- Remote control SIRIUS ID,
Advanced setup 111
- Remote control TUNER ID,
Advanced setup 110
- Remote control XM ID,
Advanced setup 111
- REMOTE IN/OUT jacks 26
- REMOTE SR, Advanced setup 111
- REMOTE TU, Advanced setup 110
- REMOTE XM, Advanced setup 111
- Rename, SCENE template 40
- Repeat 71
- Repeat, iPod playback 71
- Resetting the system 122
- REV.DELAY,
Sound field parameter 78
- REV.LEVEL,
Sound field parameter 78
- REV.TIME,
Sound field parameter 78
- Reverberation delay,
Sound field parameter 78
- Reverberation level,
Sound field parameter 78
- Reverberation time,
Sound field parameter 78
- Roleplaying Game,
Sound field program 49
- ROOM SIZE,
Sound field parameter 77
- Room size,
Sound field parameter 77

■ S

- S VIDEO jacks 17
- S.Audio, HDMI set 101
- S.INIT.DLY,
 - Sound field parameter 76
- S.LIVENESS,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- S.ROOM SIZE,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- SB INI.DLY,
 - Sound field parameter 76
- SB LEVEL,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- SB LIVENESS,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- SB ROOM SIZE,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- SBR->SBL, Automatic setup error message 120
- SCENE 1 8
- SCENE 2 8
- SCENE 3 8
- SCENE 4 8
- SCENE IR code setting,
 - Advanced setup 112
- SCENE IR, Advanced setup 112
- SCENE template rename 40
- Sci-Fi, Sound field program 49
- Searching...,
 - Bluetooth status message 119
- Selecting
 - HD Radio audio programs 57
- Selection, Audio input jacks 44
- Selection, Front speaker set 43
- Selection,
 - MULTI CH INPUT component 43
- Selection, SCENE template 37
- SET MENU usage 86
- Set-top box connection 22
- Shuffle, iPod playback 71
- SIGNAL INFO 46
- Signal information 85
- SILENT CINEMA 51
- SILENT CINEMA indicator 31
- Sirius ID 65
- SIRIUS Parental Lock personal identification number reset,
 - Advanced setup 112
- SIRIUS Satellite Radio 64
- SIRIUS Satellite Radio activation 65
- SIRIUS Satellite Radio Parental Lock,
 - Input menu 68
- SIRIUS Satellite Radio,
 - Troubleshooting 118
- SiriusConnect tuner
 - connection 64
- SL LEVEL,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- SLEEP indicator 31
- Sleep timer 47
- Sound field indicators 30
- Sound field parameter changing 74
- Sound field programs
 - with headphones 51
- Sound field programs
 - without surround speakers 51
- SOUND MENU, Manual setup 92
- Sound menu, Manual setup 83
- Source feature OSD display time,
 - Display settings 98
- SP A B indicators 31
- SP IMP., Advanced setup 109
- SP, Auto setup result 34
- Speaker cable connection 16
- Speaker distance,
 - Auto setup result 34
- Speaker distance,
 - Basic menu 90
- Speaker distances 90
- Speaker impedance setting 28
- Speaker impedance,
 - Advanced setup 109
- Speaker level adjustment 52
- Speaker level, Auto setup result 34
- Speaker level, Basic menu 89
- Speaker settings, Basic menu 87
- SPEAKER, Dynamic range 93
- SPEAKER,
 - Low frequency effect level 93
- Speakers, Dynamic range 93
- Speakers,
 - Low frequency effect level 93
- Specifications 127
- Spectacle, Sound field program 49
- Sports, Sound field program 49
- SR LEVEL,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- SR PIN, Advanced setup 112
- Standard, Sound field program 49
- STANDBY CHARGE,
 - Input menu 96
- Standby mode, Main zone 29
- Standby mode, Zone 2 108
- START PAIRING, Input menu 97
- STEREO, Sound field category 50
- Straight 51
- Straight Enhancer,
 - Sound field program 50
- STRAIGHT mode 51
- SUB UPDATED, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message 118
- SUBWOOFER PHASE,
 - Speaker settings 89
- Subwoofer phase, Speaker settings 89
- SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack
 - connection 24
- Supplied accessories 2
- Support audio, HDMI set 101
- SUR. L/R SP, Speaker settings 88
- SUR.B L/R SP, Speaker settings 88
- SUR.BACK PRE OUT jack
 - connection 24
- Surround back left/right speakers,
 - Speaker settings 88
- Surround back sound field initial delay,
 - Sound field parameter 76
- Surround back sound field liveness,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- Surround back sound field room size,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- Surround back speaker level,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- Surround decode mode 79
- Surround left speaker level,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- Surround left/right speakers,
 - Speaker settings 88
- SURROUND PRE OUT jack
 - connection 24
- Surround right speaker level,
 - Sound field parameter 79
- Surround sound field initial delay,
 - Sound field parameter 76
- Surround sound field liveness,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- Surround sound field room size,
 - Sound field parameter 77
- SYSTEM OFF 29

■ T

- Test tone, Basic menu 90
- Test tone, Equalizer 92
- TEST, Equalizer 92
- The Bottom Line,
 - Sound field program 49
- The Roxy Theatre,
 - Sound field program 49
- Tonal quality adjustment 52
- TRANSMIT indicator 31
- Troubleshooting 113
- TruBass 81
- TU, Advanced setup 112
- Tuner frequency step,
 - Advanced setup 112
- Tuner indicators 30
- Tuner, Troubleshooting 116
- Turning off 29
- Turning on 29
- Turntable connection 23
- TV Controlling, remote control 102
- TV monitor connection 20

■ U

- Unable to play,
 - iPod status message 119
- UNIT, Speaker distance 90
- Unit, Speaker distance 90
- Unknown iPod,
 - iPod status message 119
- Unplug HP!, Automatic setup error message 120
- Unprocessed input sources 51
- UPDATING, SIRIUS Satellite Radio status message 118
- USER CANCEL,
 - Automatic setup error message 120

■ V

- VCR connection 22
- VIDEO AUX jacks 26

VIDEO CONV.,	
Video settings	98
Video conversion,	
Video settings	98
Video information	46
VIDEO jacks	17
Video jacks	17
Video signal flow	19
Video sources in the background	45
Virtual CINEMA DSP	51
VIRTUAL indicator	31
VOL. TRIM, Input menu	96
VOLTAGE SELECTOR	4
VOLUME level indicator	30
Volume menu, Manual setup	83
Volume Trim, Input menu	96

■ W

W-1:OUT OF PHASE, Automatic setup	
warning message	121
W-2:OVER 24m (80ft), Automatic setup	
warning message	121
W-3:LEVEL ERROR, Automatic setup	
warning message	121
W-4:CHECK PRNS, Automatic setup	
warning message	121

■ X

XM Mini-Tuner Dock	59
XM Mini-Tuner Dock connection	59
XM satellite radio activation	60
XM Satellite Radio display	63
XM satellite radio tuning	59
XM Satellite Radio,	
Troubleshooting	117
XM Satellite Radio	59

■ Y

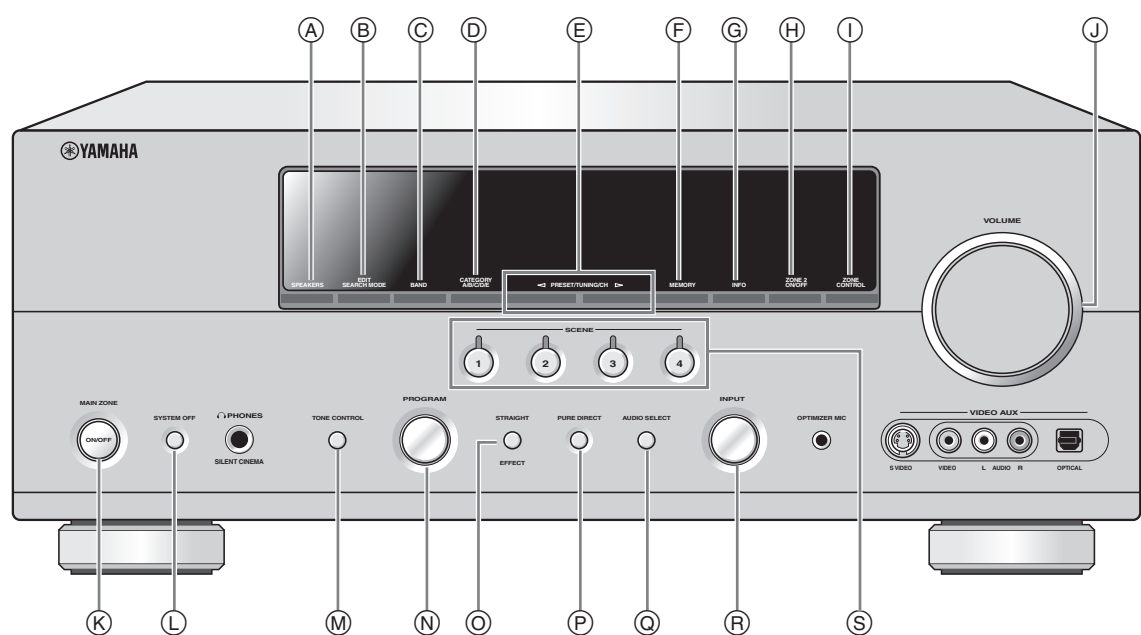
YPAO indicator	30
----------------------	----

■ Z

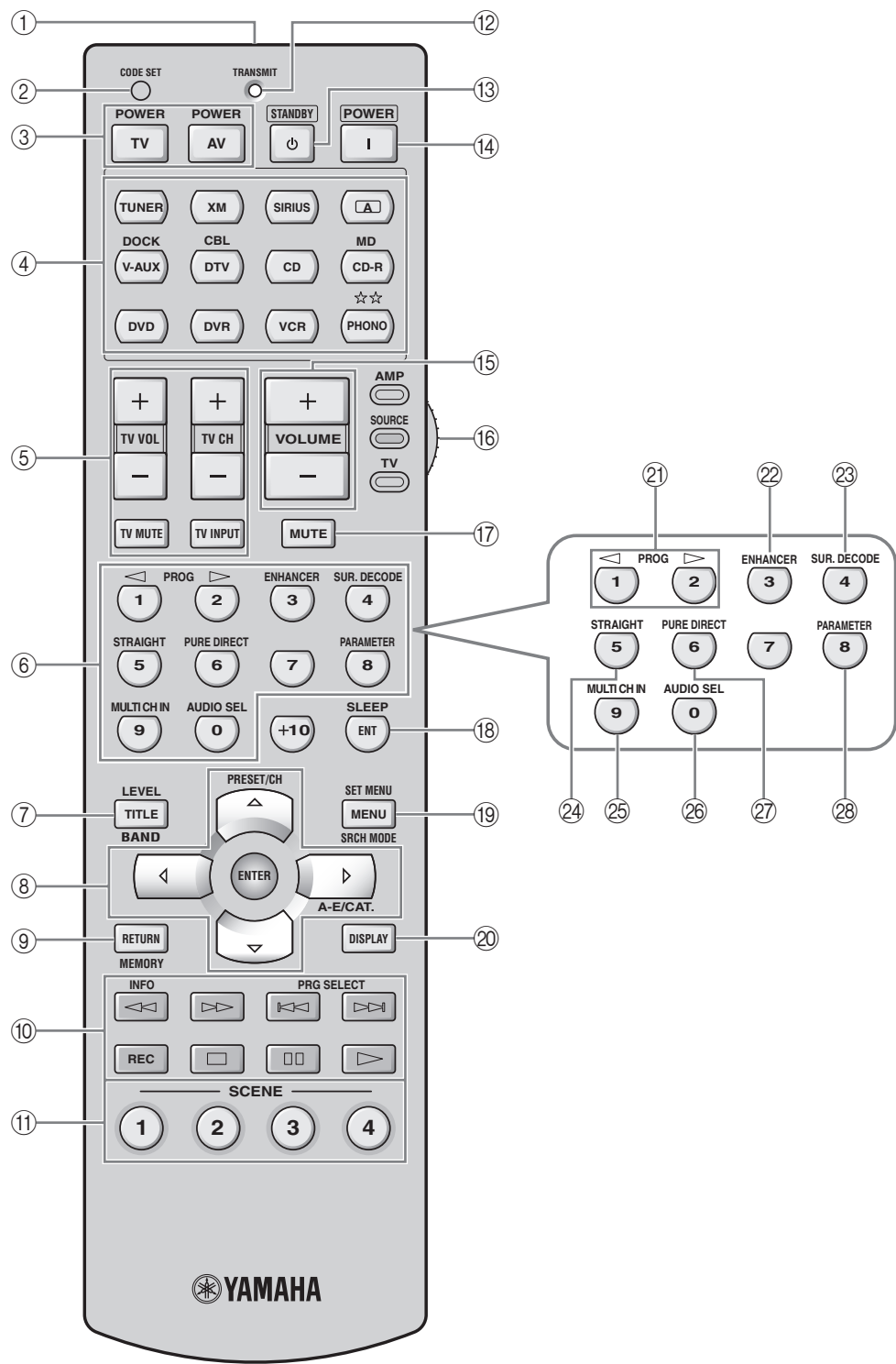
Zone 2	106
Zone 2 Initial volume,	
Zone 2 settings	101
Zone 2 Maximum volume,	
Zone 2 settings	101
Zone 2 settings, Option menu	101
Zone B	43
ZONE2 indicator	31

“(A)SPEAKERS” or “(4)DVD”
(example) indicates the name of
the parts on the front panel or the
remote control. Refer to the
attached sheet or the pages at the
end of this manual for the
information about each position of
the parts.

■ Front panel



■ Remote control



List of remote control codes

CABLE TV RECEIVER

3M	10033
A-MARK	10008, 10144
ABC	10003, 10007, 10008, 10011, 10014, 10033, 10237
ACCUPHASE	10003, 10007, 10011, 10014
ACORN	10237
ACTION	10237
ACTIVE	10237
AICHI DENSHI	11512
AMERICAST	10899
AMINO	11602, 11822
ARCHER	10237
BCC	10276
BELL & HOWELL	10014
BELL SOUTH	10899
BRITISH TELECOM	10003
CENTURY	10008
CLEARMASTER	10883
CLEARMAX	10883
COMTRONICS	10040
COOL BOX	10883
COOLMAX	10883
DIGEO	11187
DIGI	10637
DIRECTOR	10476
DUMONT	10637
DX ANTENNA	11500, 11502
EMERSON	10014
EVERQUEST	10040
FOSGATE	10276
FUJITSU	11497
GC ELECTRONICS	10040
GE	10144
GENERAL INSTRUMENT	10003, 10011, 10012, 10014, 10276, 10476, 10810
GIBRALTER	10003
GMI	10883
GOLDSTAR	10040, 10144
HAMLIN	10009, 10259, 10273
HITACHI	10003, 10008, 10009, 10011, 10033
HOUSTON	10011
HYTEK	10007
HYTEX	10007
I3 MICRO	11602
INSIGHT	10476, 10810
JEBSEE	10014
JERROLD	10003, 10011, 10012, 10014, 10276, 10476, 10810
MACOM	10033
MASPRO	11510
MEMOREX	10000
MITSUBISHI	10003

MOTOROLA	10014, 10276, 10476, 10810, 11106, 11187, 11254, 11376
MULTITECH	10883
MYRIO	11602, 11822
NEC	11496
NOVA VISION	10008
NOVAPLEX	10008
NSC	10012, 10637
OAK	10007
PACE	10008, 10237, 10877, 11877
PANASONIC	10000, 10008, 10107, 10144, 10375, 11488, 11758, 11759, 11760, 11936, 11937, 11938
PANTHER	10637
PARAGON	10000, 10008, 10525
PENNEY	10000, 10637
PHILIPS	10259, 10317, 11305
PIONEER	10144, 10533, 10877, 11021, 11500, 11782, 11877
PRISM	10012
PULSAR	10000, 10040
PULSER	10040
QUASAR	10000
R-LINE	10040
RADIOSHACK	10883
RCA	11256
REGAL	10259, 10273, 10276, 10279
REMBRANDT	10011, 10040
RUNCO	10000
SAMSUNG	10003, 10040, 10144
SCIENTIFIC ATLANTA	10000, 10003, 10008, 10012, 10237, 10477, 10877, 11510, 11877
SEJIN	11602
SIGNAL	10011, 10040
SIGNATURE	10011
SL MARX	10040
SONY	11006, 11460
SPRUCER	10144
STARCOM	10003, 10014
STARGATE	10014, 10040
STORM	10637
SUMITOMO	11500, 11503, 11504
SUPERCABLE	10276
SUPERMAX	10883
TELEAVIA	10040
TELEVIEW	10040
THOMSON	11256
TIMELESS	10040
TOCOM	10012
TORX	10003
TOSHIBA	10000, 11509
TRISTAR	10883
TV86	10040

UNITED ARTISTS	10007
UNITED CABLE	10003, 10011, 10014, 10276
US ELECTRONICS	10003, 10008, 10276
V2	10883
VIDEOWAY	10000
VIEWMASTER	10883
VISION	10883
VORTEX VIEW	10883
ZENITH	10000, 10525, 10899

CABLE/PVR COMBINATION

AMERICAST	10899
AMINO	11822
DIGEO	11187
GENERAL INSTRUMENT	10810
JERROLD	10810
MOTOROLA	10810, 11106, 11187, 11376
MYRIO	11822
PACE	10237, 11877
PIONEER	10877, 11877
RCA	11256
SCIENTIFIC ATLANTA	10877, 11877
SONY	11006
SUPERCABLE	10276
THOMSON	11256
ZENITH	10899

DBS/PVR COMBINATION

BELL EXPRESSVU	10775, 11170
DIRECTV	10099, 10392, 10639, 11076, 11142, 11377, 11392, 11442, 11443, 11444, 11640
DISH NETWORK SYSTEM	10775, 11505
DISHPRO	10775, 11505
ECHOSTAR	10775, 11170, 11505
EXPRESSVU	10775
HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS	11142, 11442, 11443, 11444
JVC	11170
MOTOROLA	10869
PHILIPS	11142, 11442
PROSCAN	10392
RCA	11392
SAMSUNG	11442
SHARP	11489
SONY	10639, 11640
STAR CHOICE	10869
TIVO	11142, 11442, 11443, 11444

ZENITH	11810
--------	-------

SATELLITE RECEIVER

AIWA	11514, 11515
ALPHASTAR	10772
AMSTRAD	10338
AUSTAR	10879
BELL EXPRESSVU	10775, 11170
CHAPARRAL	10216
COOLSAT	11806
CROSSDIGITAL	11109
DIRECTV	10099, 10247, 10392, 10566, 10639, 10724, 10749, 10819, 11076, 11108, 11109, 11142, 11377, 11392, 11414, 11442, 11443, 11444, 11609, 11639, 11640, 11749, 11856
DISH NETWORK SYSTEM	10775, 11005, 11170, 11505, 11775
DISHPRO	10775, 11005, 11505, 11775
DX ANTENNA	11530
ECHOSTAR	10775, 11005, 11170, 11505, 11775
ESAT	10879
EXPRESSVU	10775, 11775
FORTEC STAR	11821, 11948
FOXTEL	10879, 11356
FUNAI	10338, 11377
GE	10392, 10566
GENERAL INSTRUMENT	10869
GOI	10775, 11775
GOODMANS	11246
HISENSE	11535
HITACHI	10214, 10749, 10819, 11250, 11518, 11523, 11525
HOUSTON	10775
HTS	10775, 11775
HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS	10749, 11142, 11442, 11443, 11444, 11749
HUMAX	11781, 11790
ILO	11535
INNOVA	10099
JERROLD	10869
JVC	10492, 10775, 11170, 11507, 11531, 11532, 11775, 11793, 11797
LG	11226, 11414
MAGNAVOX	10722, 10724
MASPRO	11520, 11530
MATSUSHITA	10214
MCINTOSH	10869

MEMOREX 10724
 MITSUBISHI 10749
 MOTOROLA 10856, 10869
 NEC 10496, 11270, 11519
 NETSAT 10099
 NEXT LEVEL 10869
 OPTIMUS 10724
 OPTUS 11356
 PACE 11356
 PANASAT 10879
 PANASONIC 10214, 10247, 10701, 11508, 11526, 11527, 11528
 PANSAT 11807
 PAYSAT 10724
 PHILIPS 10099, 10722, 10724, 10749, 10775, 10819, 11076, 11142, 11442, 11749
 PIONEER 11142, 11442
 PRIMESTAR 10869
 PROSCAN 10392, 10566
 PROTON 11535
 RADIOSHACK 10566, 10775, 10869
 RCA 10143, 10392, 10566, 10775, 10855, 11142, 11392, 11442
 SAMSUNG 11108, 11109, 11142, 11276, 11377, 11442, 11609
 SANYO 11182, 11219
 SHARP 10494, 11489, 11513, 11517
 SKY 10099, 10856
 SONY 10163, 10275, 10294, 10639, 11524, 11639, 11640
 STAR CHOICE 10869
 STAR TRAK 10772, 10869
 THOMSON 10392, 10566
 TIVO 11142, 11442, 11443, 11444
 TOSHIBA 10486, 10749, 10790, 11285, 11501, 11516, 11530, 11749
 UEC 11356
 ULTIMATETV 11392, 11640
 ULTRASAT 11806
 UNIDEN 10722, 10724, 11521
 US DIGITAL 11535
 USDTV 11535
 VOOM 10869
 ZENITH 10856, 11810, 11856

TV

3M 21616
 A-MARK 20047, 20054, 20160
 ACCURIAN 21803
 ACCUSCAN 20047
 ACTION 20030

ADMIRAL 20017, 20047, 20051, 20054, 20093, 20179, 20180, 20264, 20463
 ADVENT 20761, 20783, 20815, 20817, 20842
 ADVENTURI 20000
 AGNA 20150
 AIKO 20092
 AIWA 21180
 AKAI 20030, 20060, 20145, 20672, 20702, 20812, 21207, 21675, 21676, 21688, 21689, 21690, 21692, 21693, 21935
 ALARON 20170, 20179
 ALBA 20037
 ALBATRON 20700, 20843
 ALFIDE 20672
 ALLERON 20030, 20170
 AMBASSADOR 20150
 AMERICA ACTION 20180
 AMERICAN HIGH 20000, 20060
 AMSTRAD 20171
 AMTRON 20000, 20180
 ANAM 20180
 ANAM NATIONAL 20161
 AOC 20030, 20180, 21365, 21590
 APEX DIGITAL 20156, 20748, 20765, 20767, 20879, 20890, 21217
 ASTAR 21531, 21548, 21738
 AUDINAC 20180
 AUDIOVOX 20092, 20179, 20180, 20451, 20623, 20802, 20875, 21284
 AVENTURA 20171
 BAYCREST 20186
 BAYSONIC 20180
 BEAUMARK 20017, 20030, 20178, 20179
 BELCOR 20030
 BELL & HOWELL 20054, 20093, 20154, 20179
 BENQ 21032, 21212, 21315
 BOXLIGHT 20893
 BRADFORD 20180
 BRILLIAN 21007, 21255, 21257, 21258
 BROCKWOOD 20030, 20178
 BROKSONIC 20180, 20236, 20463, 21935
 BROTHER 20264
 BYD-SIGN 21309, 21311, 21485, 21486
 CADIA 21283
 CANDLE 20030, 20186

CAPEHART 20017, 20030, 20036, 20092, 20178
 CARNIVALE 20030
 CARVER 20054, 20170
 CASIO 21205
 CCE 20037
 CELEBRITY 20000
 CELERA 20765
 CHAMPION 21362
 CHANGHONG 20156, 20765, 20767, 20783
 CINERAL 20092, 20451
 CITEK 20047
 CITIZEN 20000, 20030, 20054, 20060, 20092, 20171, 20180, 20186, 20451, 20463, 21669, 21671, 21672, 21935
 CLARION 20180
 CLASSIC 20030, 20092
 COLORTYME 20017, 20030, 20047, 20054, 20060, 20178
 COMMERCIAL SOLUTIONS 20047, 21447
 CONIC 20178
 CONTEC 20180
 CRAIG 20161, 20171, 20179, 20180
 CROSLEY 20000, 20030, 20054, 20171, 20180
 CROWN 20093, 20180, 20672
 CROWN MUSTANG 20672
 CURTIS MATHES 20000, 20030, 20037, 20047, 20051, 20054, 20060, 20093, 20145, 20154, 20166, 20178, 20179, 20180, 20451, 20702, 21147, 21347
 CXC 20180
 CYTRON 21326
 DAEWOO 20036, 20092, 20178, 20264, 20451, 20623, 20661, 20672, 21661, 21755, 21756
 DAYTON 20092
 DAYTRON 20030, 20036, 20092, 20178
 DELL 21080, 21178, 21264, 21403
 DELTA 21369
 DENON 20145, 20511
 DREAM VISION 21164, 21297
 DUMONT 20017, 20178, 20180
 DURABRAND 20171, 20178, 20180, 20463, 21034
 DWIN 20093
 DYNEX 21463
 EATON 20060

ELECTROBAND 20000
 ELECTROGRAPH 21623, 21755
 ELECTROHOME 20000, 20030, 20150, 20154, 20178, 20463, 21672
 EMERALD 20178
 EMERSON 20036, 20047, 20150, 20154, 20170, 20171, 20178, 20179, 20180, 20236, 20451, 20463, 20623, 21394
 EMPREX 21422, 21546
 ENVISION 20030, 20813, 21365
 EPSON 20833, 20840, 21122, 21290
 ESA 20171, 20812
 FISHER 20000, 20054, 20154
 FORTRESS 20093
 FUJITSU 20179, 20186, 20683, 20809, 20853, 21181, 21607
 FUJITSU GENERAL 20186
 FUNAI 20000, 20171, 20179, 20180, 20264, 20342, 21271
 FUTURETECH 20180
 GATEWAY 21001, 21002, 21003, 21004, 21755, 21756
 GE 20000, 20030, 20047, 20051, 20060, 20178, 20451, 21147, 21347, 21447
 GEMINI 20047
 GENERAL 20186
 GIBRALTER 20000, 20017, 20030
 GO VIDEO 20886
 GOLDSTAR 20030, 20036, 20037, 20047, 20054, 20178, 21154, 21378
 GOODMAN'S 20037
 GPX 20179
 GRADIENTE 20053, 20170
 GRAN PRIX 20179
 GRANADA 20037
 GRUNDIG 20037, 20672, 20683, 20706
 GRUNDY 20179, 20180
 GRUNPY 20179, 20180
 H & B 21366
 HAIER 21034, 21748
 HALLMARK 20178, 20179, 20180, 20236
 HANNSPREE 21348, 21351, 21352, 21745
 HARLEY DAVIDSON 20000, 20030, 20060, 20178, 20179, 20180
 HARMAN/KARDON 20054

HARVARD	20180	LLOYD'S	20030, 20179,	MOTOROLA	20051, 20054,	PETTERS	21523
HAVERMY	20093		20180, 20236		20093, 20150,	PHILCO	20030, 20054,
HEATHKIT	20017	LOGIK	20179, 20180,		20835		20145, 20179,
HELIOS	20865		20236	MOXELL	20835		20186, 20463
HELLO KITTY	20451	LUMATRON	20037, 20264	MTC	20030, 20060,	PHILIPS	20030, 20037,
HEWLETT PACKARD		LXI	20000, 20017,		20092, 20180		20054, 20171,
	21088, 21089,		20030, 20036,	MULTITECH	20179, 20180		20186, 20690,
	21101, 21494,		20037, 20047,	NAD	20037, 20156,		21154, 21254,
	21502, 21642		20051, 20053,		20166, 20178,		21454, 21455,
HISENSE	20748, 21660		20054, 20060,		20866, 21156		21483, 21744
HITACHI	20000, 20017,		20093, 20154,	NAKAMICHI	21493	PILOT	20030, 20051,
	20036, 20047,		20156, 20166,	NEC	20030, 20036,		20060, 20178
	20051, 20054,		20171, 20178,		20047, 20156,	PIONEER	20166, 20679,
	20145, 20178,		20179		20170, 20178,		20866, 21260,
	20179, 21145,	MACY	20186		20474, 20704,		21398, 21457
	21150, 21245,	MAG	21498		20882, 21398,	PLANAR	21496
	21345, 21378,	MAGNASONIC			21456, 21704,	POLAROID	20765, 20865,
	21445		20000, 20030,		21797		21262, 21276,
HP	21088, 21089,		20054, 20092,	NETTV	21755		21314, 21316,
	21101, 21494,		20093, 20156,	NIKKO	20030, 20092,		21326, 21327,
	21502, 21642		20179		20178		21328, 21341,
HUMAX	21501	MAGNAVOX	20000, 20030,	NIKKODO	20030, 20092,		21498, 21523,
HYUNDAI	20849, 20865,		20036, 20037,		20178		21538, 21763,
	21219, 21294		20047, 20051,	NIKO	21581, 21618		21766, 21767,
ICE	20264		20054, 20060,	NISHI	20030		21769, 22002
ILO	21286, 21603,		20092, 20154,	NORCENT	20748, 20824,	PORTLAND	20092, 20451
	21684		20171, 20179,		21089, 21365,	PRECISION	20180, 20236
IMA	20178, 20179,		20180, 20186,		21589, 21590,	PRIMA	20761, 20783,
	20180, 20236		20250, 20706,		21591		20815, 20817
INFINITY	20054		20802, 21198,	NORWOOD MICRO		PRINCETON	20700
INFOCUS	21164, 21430,		21254, 21365,		21286, 21296,	PRISM	20051, 20250
	21516		21454, 21525,		21303	PROSCAN	20047, 21347,
INITIAL	21603		21755	NTC	20092		21447
INNOVA	20037	MAJESTIC	20017	NYON	20000	PROTEC	20037, 20264
INSIGNIA	20171, 21204,	MARANTZ	20030, 20037,	OLEVIA	21144, 21240,	PROTON	20178
	21326, 21517,		20054, 20704,		21331, 21610	PROTRON	21320, 21323
	21564, 21641,		20854, 20855,	ONWA	20180	PROVIEW	20835, 21401,
	22002, 21710		21154, 21398,	OPTIMUS	20030, 20093,		21498
INTEQ	20017, 20145		21454		20150, 20154,	PROVISION	20037
JBL	20054	MARK	20037		20166, 20178,	PULSAR	20017, 20092
JCB	20000	MATSUI	20036, 20037		20180, 20250,	PULSER	20092, 20178
JENSEN	20761, 20815,	MATSUSHITA	20051, 20161,		20650	PUNEET	21546
	20817, 21299		20250, 20650	OPTOMA	20887, 21348,	QUARTZ	20150, 20178
JIL	20030	MAXENT	21211, 21714,		21622, 21673,	QUASAR	20051, 20250,
JINXING	20037		21755, 21756,		21674		20650
JUTAN	20030		21757	OPTONICA	20093	R-LINE	20037
JVC	20030, 20036,	MEGAPOWER	20700	ORION	20017, 20178,	RABBIT	20047
	20053, 20054,	MEGATRON	20047, 20145,		20179, 20180,	RADIOSHACK	20030, 20047,
	20160, 20650,		20178		20236, 20463,		20150, 20154,
	20653, 20731,	MEMOREX	20030, 20037,		21463		20178, 20180
	21172, 21253,		20150, 20154,	PACE	20092	RCA	20000, 20047,
	21302, 21352,		20178, 20179,	PACIFIC	20037		20051, 20054,
	21428, 21774		20180, 20463	PALSONIC	20264		20090, 20093,
KAMP	20017, 20180	MERMAID	20037	PANASONIC	20000, 20030,		20178, 20679,
KAWASHO	20030	MGA	20030, 20150,		20051, 20054,		21047, 21147,
KDS	21498		20178		20156, 20161,		21247, 21347,
KEC	20060, 20180	MGN TECHNOLOGY			20236, 20250,		21447, 21547,
KENWOOD	20030, 20180		20178		20650, 20863,		21781, 22002
KLH	20156, 20180,	MICRO	21436		21168, 21175,	REALISTIC	20030, 20047,
	20765, 20767	MICRO GENIUS			21177, 21291,		20150, 20154,
KLOSS	20030		20150		21310, 21335,		20178, 20180
KONKA	20180	MIDLAND	20017, 20047,		21410, 21480,	REVOX	20037
KOST	21262, 21483		20051		21510	RUNCO	20017, 20030,
KTV	20030, 20180,	MINATO	20037	PANDA	20706		20060, 21292,
	20463	MINTEK	21603	PAUSA	20179		21397, 21398,
LARK	20154	MITSUBISHI	20030, 20036,	PAXONIC	20030, 20060		21628, 21629,
LG	20030, 20054,		20093, 20150,	PCE	20060, 20156,		21638, 21639,
	20060, 20178,		20154, 20160,		20179		21679
	20442, 20700,		20178, 20250,	PENNEY	20000, 20030,	SAMPO	20030, 20047,
	20856, 21154,		20836, 20868,		20036, 20037,		21755, 21756
	21178, 21265,		21150, 21171,		20047, 20051,		
	21325, 21378,		21182, 21250,		20060, 20156,		
	21423, 21663,		21392, 21522,		20161, 20178,		
	21758		21550		20250, 21347,		
		MONIVISION	20700, 20843		21378		

SAMSUNG	20017, 20030, 20036, 20037, 20047, 20054, 20060, 20154, 20178, 20264, 20587, 20702, 20766, 20812, 20814, 21060, 21312, 21395, 21458	SPECTRONIQ 21498 SQUAREVIEW 20171 SR 2000, 20154, 20171 SSS 20180 STARLITE 20180, 20236 STUDIO EXPERIENCE 20843 SUPERSCAN 20093, 20864 SUPRE-MACY 20186 SUPREME 20000 SV2000 20054 SVA 20587, 20748, 20865, 20870, 20871	TOTEVISION 20051 TOYOMENKA 20178 TRUETONE 20051, 20250 TRUTECH 21723 TVS 20463 ULTRA 20092, 21323 UNIVERSAL 20047 UNIVERSUM 20036, 20037, 20170, 20264, 20474	20051 20178 20051, 20250 21723 20463 20092, 21323 20047 20036, 20037, 20170, 20264, 20474	PVR ABS 31972 ALIENWARE 31972 CYBERPOWER31972 DELL 31972 DIRECTV 30739 GATEWAY 31972 GO VIDEO 30614 HEWLETT PACKARD 31972 HITACHI 30140, 31718 HOWARD COMPUTERS 31972 HP 31972 HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS 30739 HUMAX 30739, 31797, 31988 HUSH 31972 IBUYPOWER 31972 JVC 31279 LINKSYS 31972 MEDIA CENTER PC 31972 MICROSOFT 31972 MIND 31972 MITSUBISHI 31714 NIVEUS MEDIA 31972 NORTHGATE 31972 PANASONIC 30614, 30616, 31244, 31732, 31807, 31808, 31809 PHILIPS 30618, 30739 PIONEER 31337, 31803 RCA 30880 REPLAYTV 30614, 30616 SAMSUNG 30739 SHARP 31742, 31810, 31893 SONIC BLUE 30614, 30616 SONY 30636, 31447, 31448, 31636, 31972 STACK 9 31972 SYSTEMAX 31972 TAGAR SYSTEMS 31972 TIVO 30618, 30636, 30739, 31337 TOSHIBA 30828, 31008, 31739, 31972, 31988, 31996 TOUCH 31972 VICTOR 31706 VIEWSONIC 31972 VOODOO 31972 ZT GROUP 31972
	20030, 20060	SUPREMACY 20000	US LOGIC 21286, 21303	21286, 21303	
	20030, 20060, 20463, 21935	SV2000 20054 SVA 20587, 20748, 20865, 20870, 20871	V 20864, 20885, 21755, 21756	20864, 20885, 21755, 21756	
	20000, 20036, 20037, 20047, 20054, 20088, 20154, 20171, 20376, 20424, 20463, 20799, 20893, 21142, 21179, 21755	SYLVANIA 20000, 20030, 20036, 20037, 20047, 20051, 20054, 20092, 20154, 20171, 20178, 20179, 20186, 21271, 21314, 21394	VECTOR RESEARCH 20030 VEOS 21007 VICTOR 20036, 20053, 20160, 20653, 21428	20030 21007 20036, 20053, 20160, 20653, 21428	
	20060		VIDIKRON 20054, 21292, 21302, 21397, 21398, 21628, 21629	20054, 21292, 21302, 21397, 21398, 21628, 21629	
	20878, 21217, 21360, 21599	SYMPHONIC 20000, 20171, 20178, 20179, 20180	VIDTECH 20036, 20178 VIEWSONIC 20857, 20864, 20885, 21330, 21542, 21578, 21627, 21640, 21742, 21755	20036, 20178 20857, 20864, 20885, 21330, 21542, 21578, 21627, 21640, 21742, 21755	
	20030, 20178, 20179, 20180, 20236, 21711	SYNTAX 21144, 21240, 21331, 21610			
	20000, 20017, 20030, 20036, 20037, 20047, 20051, 20053, 20054, 20060, 20093, 20154, 20156, 20166, 20171, 20178, 20179, 21007	TANDY 20093 TATUNG 20000, 20037, 20051, 21101, 21285, 21286, 21287, 21288, 21361, 21756 TEAC 20037, 20154, 20264, 20706 TECHNICS 20051, 20054, 20250	VIKING 20060 VIORE 21207, 21684 VISART 21336 VIZIO 20864, 20885, 21499, 21755, 21756, 21758	20060 21207, 21684 21336 20864, 20885, 21499, 21755, 21756, 21758	
	21297, 21351		WARDS 20000, 20017, 20030, 20037, 20047, 20051, 20054, 20093, 20154, 20166, 20178, 20179, 20186, 20236, 20866, 21156	20000, 20017, 20030, 20037, 20047, 20051, 20054, 20093, 20154, 20166, 20178, 20179, 20186, 20236, 20866, 21156	
	20036, 20054, 20093, 20179, 20180, 20256, 20787, 20818, 20851, 21165, 21453, 21459, 21602	TECHNOL ACE 20179 TECHNOVOX 20030 TECHWOOD 20051, 20060, 20250 TECO 21040 TEKNIKA 20054, 20060, 20092, 20150, 20178, 20179, 20180, 20186, 20463	WAYCON 20156 WELTON 20178 WESTINGHOUSE 20000, 20451, 20885, 20889, 20890, 21092, 21282, 21577, 21712	20156 20178 20000, 20451, 20885, 20889, 20890, 21092, 21282, 21577, 21712	
20037, 20178			20885, 20889, 20890, 21092, 21282, 21577, 21712		
20030, 20047, 20093, 20179	TELECOLOR 20017 TELEFUNKEN 20702 TELETON 20186 TEVION 20037 THOMAS 20047, 20178 THOMSON 20047, 21447 TMK 20178, 20180, 20236 TNCI 20017 TOCOM 20156 TOSHIBA 20036, 20060, 20145, 20150, 20154, 20156, 20166, 20264, 20509, 20650, 20832, 20845, 21145, 21156, 21164, 21169, 21173, 21256, 21265, 21306, 21325, 21343, 21356, 21369, 21429, 21456, 21524, 21635, 21656, 21704, 21935	WHITE WESTINGHOUSE 20179, 20236, 20451, 20463, 20623, 20889 WINBOOK 21381 WORLD 20180, 20236, 20451, 20463 WYSE 21365 XR-1000 20154, 20171, 20179, 20180 YAMAHA 20030, 20769, 20833, 20839, 21405, 21406, 21407, 21526, 21522 YORX 20030 ZENITH 20000, 20017, 20030, 20037, 20047, 20092, 20093, 20145, 20160, 20171, 20178, 20463, 20812, 21145, 21265	20179, 20236, 20451, 20463, 20623, 20889 21381 20180, 20236, 20451, 20463 21365 20154, 20171, 20179, 20180 20030, 20769, 20833, 20839, 21405, 21406, 21407, 21526, 21522 20030 20000, 20017, 20030, 20037, 20047, 20092, 20093, 20145, 20160, 20171, 20178, 20463, 20812, 21145, 21265		
20030, 20178, 20186					
20060, 20092					
20037					
20000					
20813					
20000, 20017, 20036, 20053, 20150, 20154, 20810, 20834, 20867, 21100, 21167, 21300, 21317, 21651, 21685					
20178, 20179, 20180, 20186					
21320					
21520, 21546					
20156, 20178, 20179, 20186					

ADYSON	30072	CYBERPOWER	31972	GOODMANS	30000, 30020,	M ELECTRONIC	
AIKO	30278	DAEWOO	30020, 30037,		30037, 30062,		30240
AIWA	30000, 30037,		30045, 30046,		30072, 30081,	MAGNASONIC	
	30124, 30307,		30278, 30561,		30278, 30637		30000, 30020,
	30348, 30479,		30637, 31137,	GRADIENTE	30000, 30008,		30037, 30072,
	31137, 31284,		31278		30408		30082, 30240,
	31291, 31332,	DAYTRON	30020, 30037,	GRANADA	30042, 30081		30278, 30593,
	31336		30278	GRUNDIG	30034, 30081,		31278
AKAI	30041, 30049,	DBX	30040		30226	MAGNAVOX	30000, 30035,
	30061, 30106,	DELL	31972	HARLEY DAVIDSON			30037, 30039,
	30175, 30242	DENON	30042, 30081		30000		30048, 30054,
ALBA	30072, 30209,	DERWENT	30041	HARMAN/KARDON			30081, 30110,
	30278, 30295	DIRECTV	30739		30038, 30075,		30149, 30226,
ALIENWARE	31972	DUAL	30000		30081		30240, 30563,
ALLEGRO	30039, 31137	DUMONT	30040	HARVARD	30068, 30072		30593, 30618,
AMERICA ACTION		DURABRAND	30038, 30039	HARWOOD	30068, 30072		31593, 31781
	30278	DYNATECH	30000, 30240	HEADQUARTER		MAGNIN	30240
AMERICAN HIGH		ELECTROHOME			30046	MARANTZ	30035, 30038,
	30035, 30081		30000, 30037,	HEWLETT PACKARD			30062, 30081,
AMSTRAD	30000		30043, 30060,		31972		31381
ANAM NATIONAL			30061, 30209,	HI-Q	30000, 30035,	MARTA	30037
	30226		30240		30047	MATSUI	30036, 30037,
ASHA	30240	ELECTROPHONIC		HITACHI	30000, 30035,		30209, 30295,
ASTRA	30035, 30240		30037		30037, 30041,		30348
AUDIO DYNAMICS		EMERALD	30121, 30184		30042, 30045,	MATSUSHITA	30035, 30081,
	30040	EMEREX	30032		30065, 30082,		30162, 30226,
AUDIOVOX	30037, 30038,	EMERSON	30000, 30002,		30089, 30105,		31162
	30054, 30278		30036, 30037,		30140, 30166,	MEDIA CENTER PC	
AVIS	30000, 30072		30043, 30061,		30544, 31037,		31972
BEAUMARK	30240		30068, 30121,		31286, 31326,	MEDION	30348
BELL & HOWELL			30184, 30202,		31718	MEI	30035
	30000, 30035,		30208, 30209,	HOWARD COMPUTERS		MEMOREX	30000, 30035,
	30039, 30046,		30212, 30240,		31972		30037, 30039,
	30048, 30104,		30278, 30295,	HP	31972		30046, 30047,
	30479		30348, 30378,	HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS			30048, 30054,
BROKSONIC	30002, 30121,		30479, 30510,		30042, 30739		30062, 30072,
	30184, 30208,		30561, 30593,	HUMAX	30739, 31797,		30104, 30162,
	30209, 30295,		30637, 31278,		31988		30209, 30240,
	30348, 30479,		31479, 31593	HUSH	31972		30278, 30307,
	31479	ESA	31137	HYTEK	30000, 30036,		30348, 30479,
CALIX	30037	FISHER	30000, 30039,		30047, 30072		31037, 31162,
CANDLE	30037, 30038		30046, 30047,	IBUYPOWER	31972		31237, 31262
CANON	30034, 30035		30054, 30066,	INSTANT REPLAY		METZ	30037
CAPEHART	30002, 30020,		30104		30035, 30226	MGA	30043, 30060,
	30062	FUJI	30033, 30035	ITT NOKIA	30041, 30240		30061, 30240
CARRERA	30240	FUJITSU	30000, 30045	JANEIL	30240	MGN TECHNOLOGY	
CARVER	30035, 30081	FUNAI	30000, 30037,	JENSEN	30041, 30067		30240
CCE	30072, 30278		30072, 30278,	JVC	30008, 30041,	MICROSOFT	31972
CINERAL	30278		30593, 31333,		30061, 30067,	MIDLAND	30240
CINEVISION	31137		31593		30206, 31162,	MIND	31972
CITIZEN	30000, 30035,	GARRARD	30000		31279, 31283,	MINOLTA	30042, 30105
	30036, 30037,	GATEWAY	31972		31299, 31329	MITSUBISHI	30000, 30041,
	30209, 30240,	GE	30000, 30035,	KEC	30037, 30278		30042, 30043,
	30278, 30479,		30048, 30060,	KENWOOD	30038, 30041,		30047, 30048,
	31278		30065, 30077,		30046, 30067		30060, 30061,
CLASSIC	30037		30149, 30202,	KLH	30072		30067, 30075,
COLORTYME	30035, 30045,		30240, 30760,	KODAK	30035, 30037		30173, 30214,
	30060, 30278		30761, 30807,	KTV	30000		30242, 30443,
COLT	30000, 30072		31035, 31060	LG	30037, 30038,		30807, 31343,
CRAIG	30037, 30047,	GEMINI	30060		30240, 31037,		31631, 31714
	30072, 30240,	GENERAL	30045		31137	MOTOROLA	30035, 30048
	30271	GENEXXA	30000, 30037,	LIFETEC	30348	MOVIE WALKER	
CRITERION	30000, 30072		30278	LINKSYS	31972		30072
CROSLEY	30000, 30035,	GO VIDEO	30240, 30279,	LLOYD'S	30000, 30036,	MTC	30000, 30072,
	30081, 30110,		30432, 30526,		30038, 30040,		30240
	30149		30614, 30643,		30072, 30208,	MTX	30000
CROWN	30072, 30278		31137		30240	MULTITECH	30000, 30039,
CURTIS MATHES		GOLDSTAR	30000, 30035,	LOEWE	30081		30072
	30000, 30035,		30037, 30038,	LOGIK	30000, 30072,	NAD	30104, 30240
	30041, 30060,		30039, 30054,		30240	NEC	30038, 30040,
	30162, 30240,		30278, 31137,	LUMATRON	30278		30041, 30067,
	30278, 30432,		31237	LUXOR	30046, 30106		30082, 30104,
	30643, 30760,			LXI	30000, 30037,		31287, 31288
	31035				30042, 30054,	NEW TECH	30072
CYBERNEX	30240				30067	NIKKO	30037, 30278

NIKKODO	30037, 30278	PULSAR	30039, 30240,	SEARS	30000, 30033,	THOMAS	30000, 30002
NIKON	30034		30278		30034, 30035,	THOMSON	30041, 30060,
NISHI	30240	PULSER	30240		30036, 30037,		30202
NIVEUS MEDIA		QUARTER	30046		30039, 30041,	TISONIC	30278
	31972	QUARTZ	30035, 30046,		30042, 30043,	TIVO	30618, 30636,
NOBLEX	30240		30047		30045, 30046,		30739, 31337,
NORTHGATE	31972	QUASAR	30002, 30035,		30047, 30048,		31996
OLYMPUS	30035, 30104,		30077, 30162,		30054, 30060,	TMK	30000, 30036,
	30162, 30226		30226, 31035,		30065, 30066,		30208, 30240
ONKYO	30222		31162		30067, 30072,	TNIX	30037
OPTIMUS	30000, 30035,	RADIOSHACK	30000, 30035,		30104, 30105,	TOCOM	30240
	30037, 30047,		30037, 30046,		30162, 30209,	TOSHIBA	30000, 30041,
	30048, 30054,		30047, 30048,		31237		30042, 30043,
	30062, 30104,		30062, 30066,	SHARP	30000, 30032,		30045, 30054,
	30162, 30240,		30104, 30162,		30047, 30048,		30062, 30066,
	30432, 30593,		30240, 31037,		30062, 30065,		30209, 30210,
	31048, 31062,		31162		30807, 30848,		30212, 30240,
	31162, 31262	RADIX	30037		31285, 31742,		30544, 30828,
OPTONICA	30062	RANDEX	30037		31810, 31893		30845, 31008,
ORION	30000, 30002,	RCA	30000, 30035,	SHINTOM	30000, 30039,		31145, 31289,
	30036, 30104,		30042, 30045,		30072, 30208,		31290, 31323,
	30121, 30184,		30048, 30054,		30240		31325, 31739,
	30208, 30209,		30060, 30065,	SHOGUN	30240		31972, 31988,
	30240, 30278,		30077, 30105,	SIEMENS	30037, 30104		31996
	30295, 30479,		30106, 30149,	SIGNATURE	30000, 30035,	TOSONIC	30278
	31479		30166, 30202,		30037, 30046,	TOTEVISION	30037, 30240
PANAMA	30035		30240, 30760,		30048, 30060,	TOUCH	31972
PANASONIC	30000, 30020,		30761, 30807,		30065, 30066,	TRIX	30037
	30035, 30077,		30880, 31035,		30149, 30479	ULTRA	30020, 30045,
	30162, 30225,		31060	SINGER	30037, 30072,		30278
	30226, 30378,	REALISTIC	30000, 30035,		30240	UNITECH	30240
	30614, 30616,		30037, 30046,	SONIC BLUE	30614, 30616,	VECTOR	30045
	31035, 31062,		30047, 30048,		30643, 31137	VECTOR RESEARCH	
	31162, 31244,		30062, 30065,	SONOGRAPHIE	30046		30038, 30040,
	31262, 31292,		30066, 30104,	SONY	30000, 30032,		30184
	31293, 31308,		30121, 30162,		30033, 30034,	VEXTRA	30072
	31317, 31732,		30240, 30278,		30035, 30046,	VICTOR	30008, 30041,
	31807, 31808,		31162		30047, 30049,		30067, 31283,
	31809	REPLAYTV	30614, 30616		30067, 30226,		31299, 31706
PENNEY	30000, 30035,	RICAVISION	31972		30636, 31032,	VIDEO CONCEPTS	
	30037, 30038,	RICOH	30034		31232, 31295,		30040, 30045,
	30040, 30042,	RIO	31137		31296, 31297,		30061, 30210,
	30047, 30054,	RUNCO	30039		31447, 31448,		30242
	30067, 30077,	SALORA	30075		31636, 31702,	VIDEOMAGIC	30037
	30081, 30162,	SAMSUNG	30000, 30038,		31972	VIDEOSONIC	30000, 30072,
	30240, 31035,		30045, 30060,	SOUNDMASTER			30240
	31237		30077, 30240,		30000	VIEWSONIC	31972
PENTAX	30042, 30065,		30432, 30739,	STACK 9	31972	VILLAIN	30000
	30105		31014	STS	30042, 30105	VOODOO	31972
PHILCO	30000, 30035,	SAMTRON	30240, 30643	SV2000	30000, 30072	WARDS	30000, 30033,
	30081, 30110,	SANKY	30039, 30048	SVA	30000		30035, 30037,
	30209, 30479	SANSUI	30000, 30002,	SYLVANIA	30000, 30035,		30038, 30041,
PHILIPS	30000, 30034,		30041, 30067,		30043, 30081,		30042, 30043,
	30035, 30045,		30072, 30082,		30110, 30593,		30045, 30046,
	30048, 30062,		30209, 30240,		31593, 31781		30047, 30048,
	30081, 30110,		30271, 30479,	SYMPHONIC	30000, 30002,		30060, 30062,
	30162, 30209,		31479		30240, 30593,		30065, 30072,
	30616, 30618,	SANYO	30000, 30046,		31593		30081, 30149,
	30739, 31081,		30047, 30104,	SYSTEMAX	31972		30212, 30240,
	31181, 31266,		30159, 30240,	TAGAR SYSTEMS			30479, 30760
	31381		30479, 31330,		31972	WHARFEDALE	
PILOT	30037		31331	TANDY	30000, 30104		30593
PIONEER	30042, 30067,	SCIENTIFIC ATLANTA		TASHIKO	30037	WHITE WESTINGHOUSE	
	30081, 30162,		30008	TATUNG	30000, 30008,		30000, 30072,
	31337, 31803	SCOTT	30036, 30043,		30041, 30048,		30209, 30278,
POLK AUDIO	30081		30045, 30121,		30067, 30081		30479, 30637
PORTLAND	30020, 30278		30184, 30208,	TEAC	30000, 30041,	WORLD	30002, 30209,
PRESIDIAN	31593		30210, 30212		30067		30479
PROFITRONIC	30240			TECHNICS	30000, 30035,	XR-1000	30000, 30035,
PROSCAN	30060, 30202,				30037, 30162		30072, 30208,
	30760, 30761,			TEKNIKA	30000, 30035,		30240
	31060				30037	YAMAHA	30038, 30041
PROTEC	30000, 30072			TELECORDER	30240		
PROTECH	30072			TELEFUNKEN	30041, 30208		
				TEVION	30479		

ZENITH	30000, 30033, 30034, 30037, 30039, 30041, 30209, 30278, 30479, 30637, 31137, 31139, 31479	CAMBRIDGE SOUNDWORKS	40690	GE	40522, 40717, 40815	LASONIC	40627, 40798, 41173, 41747
ZT GROUP	31972	CARY AUDIO DESIGN	41477	GENICA	40750	LECSON	41533
DVD PLAYER		CAVS	41057, 41387	GO VIDEO	40573, 40715, 40717, 40741, 40744, 40783, 40833, 40869, 41044, 41075, 41099, 41144, 41148, 41158, 41304, 41443, 41483, 41730	LENOXX	41127
3D LAB	40503, 40539	CELESTIAL	41020			LEXICON	40671
ACCURIAN	40675, 41072, 41416, 41737	CENTREX	40672, 41004			LG	40591, 40741, 40801, 40869, 41526, 41600
ACOUSTIC SOLUTIONS		CENTRIOS	41577			LITEON	41058, 41158, 41416, 41440, 41656, 41738
	40730	CINEA	40831				
ADCOM	41094	CINEMATRIX	41052			LOEWE	40511, 40741
ADVENT	41016	CINEVISION	40833, 40869, 40876, 41483	GO VISION	41071, 41072	LOGIX	40783
AFREEY	40698	CITIZEN	40695, 41003, 41277, 41587, 42116	GOLDSTAR	40741, 40801, 40869	MAGNASONIC	40651, 40675
AIWA	40641					MAGNAVOX	40503, 40539, 40646, 40675, 40821, 41268, 41354, 41472, 41506
AKAI	40695, 40705, 40770, 40899, 41089	CLAIRTONE	40571			MALATA	40782, 41159
ALBA	40672, 40717	CLASSE	41543	GOODMANS	40790	MARANTZ	40503, 40539, 40675, 41627
ALCO	40790	COBY	40778, 40852, 41077, 41086, 41107, 41165, 41177, 41321, 41351, 41628	GPX	40699, 40769	MCINTOSH	41273, 41373, 41533
ALLEGRO	40869			GRADIENTE	40490, 40651	MEDION	40651
AMPHION MEDIA WORKS		CRAIG	40831	GREENHILL	40717	MEMOREX	40695, 40831, 41270
	40872, 41245	CREATIVE	40503, 40539	GRUNDIG	40539, 40705	MERIDIAN	41497
AMW	40872, 41245	CURTIS MATHES	41087	HARMAN/KARDON	40582, 40702 42080	MICROSOFT	40522, 41708, 42083
APEX DIGITAL		CYBERHOME	40816, 40874, 41023, 41024, 41117, 41129, 41502, 41537	HELIOS	42080	MINATO	40752
	40533, 40672, 40717, 40755, 40794, 40795, 40796, 40797, 40830, 40856, 41004, 41020, 41056, 41061, 41100, 41126			HELLO KITTY	40831	MINTEK	40717, 40839, 41472
ARCAM	40732	D-LINK	41881	HITACHI	40573, 40664, 41247, 41664, 41764, 41765, 41766	MITSUBISHI	40521, 41403, 41521, 41629
ARRGO	41023	DAEWOO	40705, 40770, 40784, 40833, 40869, 41169, 41172, 41234, 41242, 41441, 41443	I-O DATA	41405	MIXSONIC	41130
ASPIRE DIGITAL				ILO	41348, 41472	MOMITSU	41082, 41626
	40594, 41168, 41391, 41407	DANSAI	40770	INITIAL	40717, 41472	MUSTEK	40730
ASTAR	41461, 41489, 41494, 41678, 41679	DAYTEK	40122, 40872	INNOVATIVE TECHNOLOGY	41542	MYRYAD	40894
AUDIOLOGIC	40736	DECCA	40770			NAD	40692, 40741
AUDIOVOX	40717, 40790, 41041, 41071, 41072, 41121, 41122	DENON	40490, 40634, 41282, 41634, 42134	INOI	41747	NAIKO	40770
AWA	40730	DENVER	40778	INSIGNIA	41013, 41268, 41712, 42095	NAKAMICHI	41222
AXION	41071, 41072	DESAY	41407, 41455	INTEGRA	40571, 40627, 41634	NAXA	41473
B & K	40655, 40662	DIAMOND VISION	41316, 41609, 41610	INTERVIDEO	41124	NEC	40785, 40869, 41404
BANG & OLUFSEN	41696	DIGITALMAX	41738	IRT	40783	NESA	40717
BBK	41224	DIGITREX	40672	JATON	41078	NEUNEO	40509, 41454
BEL CANTO DESIGN	41571	DISNEY	40675, 41270	JBL	40702	NEXT BASE	40826
BLADELIUS	41682	DIVIDO	40705	JENSEN	40174, 41016	NEXSTECH	41402
BLAUPUNKT	40717	DUAL	40675, 41068, 41085	JMB	40695	NINTAUS	41051
BLUE PARADE	40571	DURABRAND	41127	JSI	41423	NORCENT	40719, 40872, 41003, 41107, 41265, 41457, 41461
BLUE SKY	40695, 40699	DVD2000	40521	JVC	40558, 40623, 40867, 41164, 41241, 41275, 41550, 41590, 41591, 41592, 41594, 41602	NOVA	41517, 41518, 41519, 41520
BOSE	41895	ELECTROHOME	41003, 41729, 42116	KALEIDESCAPE	41790	ONKYO	40503, 40627, 40792, 41417, 41418, 41612, 41627, 41769
BOSS AUDIO SYSTEMS	41680	ELTA	40690	KAWASAKI	40790	OPPO	40575, 41224, 41525, 42115
BRANDT	40651	EMERSON	40591, 40675, 40821, 41268	KENWOOD	40490, 40534, 40682, 40737	OPTIMUS	40571
BROKSONIC	40695, 40868, 41419	ENCORE	41374			OPTOMEDIA ELECTRONICS	40896
BUSH	40690	ENTERPRISE	40591	KLH	40717, 40790, 41020, 41149, 41261	ORION	41695
BYD-SIGN	40872	ENTIVO	40503, 40539	KLOSS	40533	ORITRON	40651
CALIFORNIA AUDIO LABS	40490	ENZER	40770	KONKA	40711, 40719, 40720, 40721	PALSONIC	40672, 40852
CAMBRIDGE AUDIO	41471	ESA	40821, 41268, 41443	KOSCH	41677	PANASONIC	40490, 40503, 40571, 40632, 40703, 41010, 41011, 41282, 41362, 41462, 41490, 41632, 41641, 41762
		FIRSTLINE	40651	KOSS	40651, 40769, 40896, 41061, 41423		
		FISHER	40670	KREISEN	41421		
		FUNAI	40675, 41268, 41334	KRELL	41498		
		GATEWAY	41073, 41077, 41158, 41194	LAFAYETTE	41369		
				LANDEL	40826		

PHILCO 40675, 40690
 PHILIPS 40503, 40539,
 40646, 40671,
 40675, 40854,
 41260, 41267,
 41340, 41354,
 41846, 42056,
 42084
 PHONOTREND 40699
 PIANODISC 41024
 PIONEER 40142, 40525,
 40571, 40631,
 40632, 40638,
 41460, 41475,
 41476, 41512,
 41571
 POLAROID 41013, 41020,
 41061, 41086,
 41245, 41261,
 41316, 41478,
 41480, 41482
 POLK AUDIO 40539
 PORTLAND 40770
 PRESIDIAN 40675, 41072,
 41738
 PRIMA 41016
 PRIMARE 40886, 41467,
 41618
 PRINCETON 40674
 PROCEED 40672
 PROSCAN 40522
 PROSONIC 40699
 PROTRON 41461
 PROVISION 40778
 QWESTAR 40651
 RADIONETTE 40741
 RADIOSHACK 40571
 RCA 40522, 40571,
 40717, 40790,
 40822, 41013,
 41022, 41132,
 41193, 41769
 REALISTIC 40571
 REALMAGIC 40674
 REOC 40752
 REVOY 40699
 RIO 40869
 RJTECH 40118, 41360,
 41376
 ROTEL 40623, 41178,
 41734
 ROWA 40823, 41004
 SABA 40651
 SAMPO 40698, 40752,
 41501
 SAMSUNG 40199, 40490,
 40573, 40744,
 40820, 40899,
 41044, 41075,
 41470, 41599,
 42069
 SANSUI 40695, 41695
 SANYO 40670, 40675,
 40695, 40873,
 41334, 41583
 SCHNEIDER 40783
 SCHWAIGER 40752
 SENSORY SCIENCE 41158
 SHARP 40630, 40675,
 40752, 41256,
 41556, 41642,
 42550
 SHARPER IMAGE 41117

SHERWOOD 40633, 40770,
 41043, 41077,
 41889
 SHINSONIC 40533, 40839
 SIGMA DESIGNS 40674
 SILVERCREST 41368
 SLIM ART 40784
 SM ELECTRONIC 40690, 40730
 SONIC BLUE 40573, 40715,
 40783, 40869,
 41099
 SONY 40533, 40772,
 40864, 41033,
 41069, 41070,
 41431, 41433,
 41516, 41533,
 41536, 41548,
 41633
 SOVA 41122
 SUNGALE 41074, 41342,
 41532
 SUPERSCAN 40821
 SVA 40717, 40860,
 41105
 SYLVANIA 40675, 40821,
 41268
 SYMPHONIC 40675, 40821,
 41268, 41334
 TAG MCLAREN 40894
 TATUNG 40770
 TEAC 40571, 40692,
 40717, 40790,
 40809
 TECHNICS 40490, 40703
 TECHNIKA 40770
 TECHNOSONIC 40730
 TECHWOOD 40692
 TERAPIN 41031, 41053,
 41166
 TEVION 40651
 THETA DIGITAL 40571
 THOMSON 40511, 40522
 THULE AUDIO 41007
 TIVO 41503, 41512,
 41588
 TOSHIBA 40503, 40539,
 40573, 40695,
 41045, 41154,
 41503, 41510,
 41515, 41588,
 41595, 41608,
 41639, 41769
 TREDEX 40799, 40800,
 40803, 40804
 UNIMAX 40770
 UNITED 40730
 UNIVERSUM 40591
 URBAN CONCEPTS 40503, 40539
 US LOGIC 40839
 V 41064, 41126,
 41226
 VENTURER 40790
 VIALTA 41509
 VICTOR 41241, 41597
 VIEWMAGE 41374
 VIZIO 41064, 41126,
 41226
 VOCOPRO 41027, 41360
 WESDER 40699

WINTEL 41131
 WYSE 41652
 XBOX 40522, 41708,
 42083
 XWAVE 41001
 YAMAHA 40490, 40497,
 40539, 40545,
 40817, 41282,
 42543, 42544
 YAMAKAWA 40872
 ZENITH 40503, 40591,
 40741, 40869
 ZEUS 40784
 ZOECE 41265

BLU-RAY/HD DVD PLAYER

LG 40741
 ONKYO 41769
 PANASONIC 41641
 PHILIPS 42084
 PIONEER 40142
 RCA 41769
 SAMSUNG 40199
 SONY 41516
 TOSHIBA 41515, 41769

LD PLAYER

AIWA 40203
 CARVER 40064, 40194
 DENON 40059, 40172,
 40241

DISCO VISION

40023
 FUNAI 40203
 HARMAN/KARDON 40194
 HITACHI 40023
 KENWOOD 40236, 40258
 MAGNAVOX 40064, 40194,
 40217, 40241
 MARANTZ 40064, 40194
 MITSUBISHI 40059, 40241
 NAD 40059
 OPTIMUS 40059
 PANASONIC 40204
 PHILIPS 40064, 40194
 PIONEER 40023, 40059,
 40241
 POLK AUDIO 40194
 QUASAR 40204
 REALISTIC 40203
 SEGA 40023
 SHARP 40001
 SONY 40193, 40201
 TECHNICS 40204
 THETA DIGITAL 40194
 TOSHIBA 40059
 VICTOR 40245
 WARDS 40059
 YAMAHA 40217

DVD RECORDER

ACCURIAN 50675, 51416
 APEX DIGITAL 51056
 ASPIRE DIGITAL 51168
 ASTAR 51489
 BROKSONIC 51419
 CITIZEN 52116

COBY 51086
 CYBERHOME 51129, 51502
 DENON 50490
 DIGITALMAX 51738
 ELECTROHOME 52116
 EMERSON 50675
 FUNAI 50675, 51334
 GATEWAY 51073, 51158,
 51194
 GO VIDEO 50741, 51158,
 51304, 51730
 HITACHI 51664, 51764
 ILO 51348
 JVC 51164, 51275
 KREISEN 51421
 LG 50741
 LITEON 51158, 51416,
 51440, 51738
 MAGNAVOX 50646, 50675,
 51506
 MITSUBISHI 51403, 51629
 NEC 51404
 PANASONIC 50490, 51010,
 51011
 PHILIPS 50646, 51340
 PIONEER 50631, 51460,
 51475, 51476,
 51512
 POLAROID 51086
 PRESIDIAN 51738
 RCA 50522
 SAMSUNG 50490
 SANYO 51583
 SENSORY SCIENCE 51158
 SHARP 50630, 50675,
 51556, 51642,
 52550
 SONY 51033, 51069,
 51070, 51431,
 51433, 51536
 SYLVANIA 50675
 TOSHIBA 51510, 51588,
 51639
 VICTOR 51597, 51275
 YAMAHA 52544
 ZENITH 50741

CD PLAYER

ACOUSTIC RESEARCH 60420
 ADC 60018
 ADCOM 60234
 ADMIRAL 60305
 AIWA 60157
 AKAI 60083, 60643,
 61688
 ALBA 60625
 ANAM NATIONAL 60362
 ARCAM 60157
 AUDIO PRO 60437
 AUDIO RESEARCH 60157
 BURMESTER 60420
 CAIRN 60157
 CALIFORNIA AUDIO LABS 60029, 60303
 CAMBRIDGE AUDIO 61731
 CAMBRIDGE SOUNDWORKS 60157

CARVER	60157, 60179, 60437	MYRYAD	60157	TDK	61208	RCA	70027
CARY AUDIO DESIGN	61876	NAD	61208	TEAC	60180, 60362, 60420, 60490	SHARP	70205, 70371, 70412
CCE	60643	NAKAMICHI	60147, 60373	TECHNICS	60029, 60303	SONY	70170, 70243, 70291
CLASSIC	61297	NEC	60043, 60234	TECHWOOD	60303, 60362	TEAC	70308, 70309, 70365
CURTIS MATHES	60032	NIKKO	60362, 60625	THULE AUDIO	60157	TECHNICS	70229
DENON	60003, 60034, 60626, 60766, 60873	NSM	60157	TIVOLI AUDIO	61553	TECHNOVOX	70229
DKK	60000	ONKYO	60101, 60868, 61327, 61685	TOSHIBA	61693, 61694	TECHWOOD	70365
DMX ELECTRONICS	60157	OPTIMUS	60000, 60032, 60037, 60087, 60145, 60179, 60305, 60420, 60437, 60468, 61063, 61075	UNIVERSUM	60437	VICTOR	70273
EMERSON	60305	PANASONIC	60029, 60303, 60388, 60752, 61682	VICTOR	60072	WARDS	70027
FISHER	60000, 60179, 61325	PARASOUND	60420	WARDS	60032, 60053, 60087, 60157, 60179	YAMAHA	70097, 70205, 70524
FUNAI	60305	PENNEY	60029	YAMAHA	60036, 60490, 60868, 60888, 61292, 62907, 62909		
GARRARD	60420	PHILIPS	60157, 60274, 60626	YBA	60625		
GEMINI	60625	PIONEER	60032, 60305, 60468, 61062, 61063, 61087	YORX	60000		
GENEXXA	60032, 60305	POLK AUDIO	60157				
GOLDSTAR	61208	PRIMARE	61852				
GPX	61296	PROCEED	60420				
GRUNDIG	60157	PROTON	60157				
HAFLER	60173	QED	60157				
HARMAN/KARDON	60083, 60100, 60157, 60173, 61202	QUAD	60157				
HITACHI	60032	QUASAR	60029				
INKEL	60157, 60180	RADIOSHACK	60000, 60032, 60179, 60180, 60420, 60437, 60468, 61075				
INTEGRA	60101	RCA	60032, 60053, 60179, 60305, 60420, 60468, 60764, 61062				
JERROLD	60003	REALISTIC	60000, 60032, 60087, 60145, 60179, 60180, 60305, 60420, 60437, 60468				
JVC	60032, 60072, 61294	REVOX	60157				
KENWOOD	60000, 60028, 60029, 60037, 60190, 60626, 60681, 60826, 61683	ROKSAN	60435				
KLH	61318, 61711	ROTEL	60157, 60420				
KOSS	61317	SAE	60157				
KRELL	60157	SAMSUNG	60524				
KYOCERA	60018	SANSUI	60000, 60157, 60305, 61760				
LG	61208	SANYO	60000, 60087, 60179				
LINN	60157	SCOTT	60305				
LUXMAN	60328, 60489	SEARS	60179, 60305				
LXI	60179, 60305	SHARP	60034, 60037, 60180, 60861, 61684				
MAGNAVOX	60038, 60157, 60274, 60305	SHERWOOD	60180, 61067, 61950				
MARANTZ	60029, 60038, 60157, 60180, 60373, 60435, 60626	SHURE	60043				
MARK LEVINSON	61484	SONIC FRONTIERS	60157				
MATSUI	60157	SONY	60000, 60100, 60185, 60490, 61364, 61790				
MCINTOSH	60256, 60290, 60660, 61703	SOUNDESIGN	60145				
MCS	60029, 60043	STS	60018				
MEMOREX	60000, 60032, 60179, 60420, 60437, 60468	SUGDEN	60157				
MGA	60083	SYLVANIA	60157				
MICROMEGA	60157	SYMPHONIC	60180, 60305				
MIRO	60000	TAG MCLAREN	60157				
MISSION	60157	TANDY	60032				
MINISUBISHI	60083, 60098, 60808	TASCAM	60420				
MODULAIRE	60000, 60032, 60087, 60145, 60179, 60180, 60420, 60437, 60468						
MTC	60420, 60625						

TUNER

ADC	80531
ADCOM	80616, 81616, 81617
AIWA	80121, 80158, 80189, 81243, 81321, 81347, 81388, 81405, 81641
AKAI	80224, 80346, 81255
ALCO	81390
AMC	81077
AMPLIFIER TECHNOLOGIES	81584
ANAM	81074, 81609
APEX DIGITAL	81257, 81430, 81774
ARCAM	81189
ATLANTIC TECHNOLOGY	81487
AUDIO PRO	80148
AUDIOPHASE	81387
AUDIOTRONIC	81189
AUDIOVOX	81390, 81627
B & K	80701, 80702, 80820, 80840
BEL CANTO DESIGN	81584
BK	80702
BOSE	80639, 81229, 81253, 81933
BRIX	81602
CAIRN	80189
CAMBRIDGE SOUNDWORKS	81477
CAPETRONIC	80531
CARVER	80008, 80121, 80189, 80360, 81189, 81289
CASIO	80195
CLARINETTE	80195
CLASSE	81920
CLATRONIC	80797
COBY	81263
CURTIS	80797, 81263
CURTIS MATHES	80014, 80080
DELL	81383
DELPHI	81414, 81846
DENON	80121, 80386, 81142, 81306, 81311, 81360
ELECTROHOME	82026
EMERSON	80195, 80424, 80531

CD RECORDER

CLASSIC	71297
DENON	70626, 70766
FISHER	71325
GPX	71296
HARMAN/KARDON	71202
JVC	71294
KENWOOD	70626
LG	71208
MARANTZ	70626
NAD	71208
PHILIPS	70626
PIONEER	71062, 71087
RCA	70053, 70420
SONY	70000, 70100, 71364
TDK	71208
TEAC	70420
YAMAHA	70888, 71292

MD RECORDER

AKAI	71688
DENON	70873
KENWOOD	70681, 70826, 71683
ONKYO	70868, 71685
OPTIMUS	71063
PANASONIC	71682
PIONEER	71063
SANSUI	71760
SHARP	70861, 71684
SHERWOOD	71067
SONY	70490, 71790
YAMAHA	70490, 70888, 72909

TAPE DECK

AIWA	70197
DENON	70076, 70371, 70412
GARRARD	70308, 70309
JVC	70244, 70273
KENWOOD	70070, 70205, 70365
NIKKO	70365
ONKYO	70135, 70282
OPTIMUS	70027
PANASONIC	70229
PIONEER	70027, 70099

FISHER	80008, 80219, 80360, 80797, 81409, 81801	OPTIMUS	80014, 80074, 80080, 80121, 80158, 80163, 80177, 80186, 80195, 80219, 80531, 80670, 80797, 80849, 81023, 81074	SONIC BLUE	81383, 81869
FOSGATE	81487			SONY	80158, 80168, 81058, 81131, 81258, 81367, 81371, 81382, 81406, 81441, 81458, 81503, 81529, 81558, 81622, 81658, 81758, 81759, 81858
GARRARD	80281, 80424, 80463			SOUNDESIGN	80670
GATEWAY	81567			STEREOPHONICS	
GLORY HORSE	81263	ORITRON	81366, 81497		81023
GOLDSTAR	80281	OUTLAW	80391, 81487	SUNFIRE	81313
GOODMANS	80797	PANASONIC	80039, 80309, 80367, 81275, 81288, 81308, 81316, 81350, 81363, 81509, 81518, 81548, 81633, 81675, 81763, 81764, 82967	SYLVANIA	80797
GPX	81299			TEAC	80163, 80463, 81074, 81267, 81390, 81528
GRUNDIG	80189, 80281, 81387			TECHNICS	80039, 80208, 80309, 81308, 81384, 81518, 81633, 81675
HARMAN/KARDON	80110, 80189, 80891, 81289, 81304, 81306	PENNEY	80039, 80195	TECHWOOD	80281
HITACHI	80386, 81273, 81801	PHILIPS	80189, 80391, 80891, 81189, 81266, 81268, 81269, 81283, 81365, 81368	THORENS	81189
INSIGNIA	81030, 81077			TOSHIBA	80080, 80135, 80842, 81123, 81788
INTEGRA	80135, 80842, 81298, 81320, 81805	PIONEER	80014, 80080, 80150, 80281, 80346, 80531, 80630, 81023, 81123, 81284, 81343, 81384, 81678, 81823, 81935, 81986	VENTURER	80849, 81390
JBL	80110, 81306			VICTOR	80074
JVC	80074, 80262, 80464, 81058, 81263, 81282, 81374, 81495, 81643, 81665, 81811			WARDS	80014, 80080, 80158, 80189
KAWASAKI	81390	POLK AUDIO	80189, 81289, 81414	XM	81406, 81414, 81846
KENWOOD	80027, 80077, 80186, 80262, 81313, 81363, 81569, 81570, 81770	PROCEED	81922	YAMAHA	80176, 80186, 80376, 81023, 81176, 81276, 81331, 81375, 81476, 81815, 81949, 82176, 82177, 82178, 82179, 82908, 82915, 82918, 82919
KLH	81390, 81428	PROSCAN	81254	YBA	81921
KOSS	80424, 81366, 81497	QUASAR	80039	YORX	80195
LEXICON	81076	RADIOSHACK	81263, 81609	ZENITH	80281, 80346, 80857
LG	80281	RCA	80080, 80346, 80360, 80530, 80531, 81023, 81074, 81123, 81254, 81390, 81511, 81609		
LINN	80189				
LIQUID VIDEO	81497	REALISTIC	80121, 80158, 80163, 80177, 80186, 80195, 81609		
LLOYD'S	80195				
MAGNAVOX	80128, 80189, 80195, 80391, 80531, 81189, 81266, 81269, 81514	REVOX	80189		
MARANTZ	80039, 80128, 80189, 80200, 80891, 81189, 81269, 81289, 81671	RIO	81383, 81869		
MCINTOSH	81289	SAMSUNG	81295, 81304, 81500		
MCS	80039, 80346				
MICROMEGA	80189, 81189	SANGEAN	82165		
MITSUBISHI	81393, 81920, 81921, 81922, 81957	SANSUI	80148, 80189, 80346, 81092, 81189, 81764		
MODULAIRE	80195	SANYO	80219, 80360, 81251, 81801		
MYRYAD	81189	SCOTT	80163, 80322		
NAD	80320	SEARS	80195, 80424		
NAKAMICHI	80097, 80347, 81092, 81313, 81555	SHARP	80186, 80262, 81286, 81361, 81386		
NEC	80235	SHARPER IMAGE	80797, 81263, 81385, 81409, 81410, 81411, 81416		
NIKKO	80322				
NIKKODO	80322	SHERWOOD	81077, 81423, 81567		
ONKYO	80135, 80380, 80842, 81298, 81320, 81677, 81805	SIRIUS	81602, 81627, 81770, 81811, 81987		
		SONIC	80281		

OTHER AUDIO ACCESSORIES

YAMAHA	82981, 82982,
(iPod)	82983



© 2008 YAMAHA CORPORATION All rights reserved.

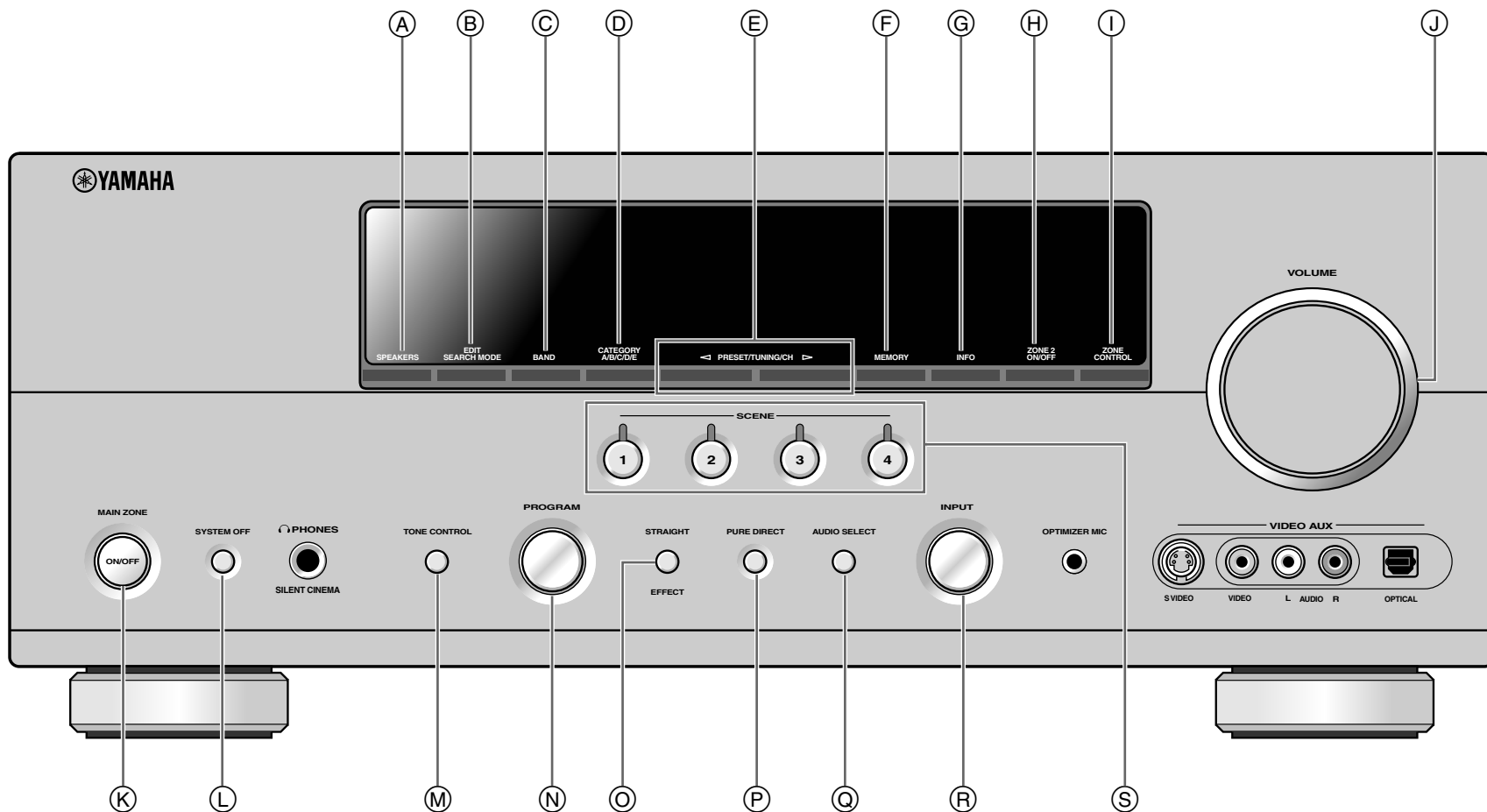
YAMAHA ELECTRONICS CORPORATION, USA 6660 ORANGETHORPE AVE., BUENA PARK, CALIF. 90620, U.S.A.
YAMAHA CANADA MUSIC LTD. 135 MILNER AVE., SCARBOROUGH, ONTARIO M1S 3R1, CANADA
YAMAHA ELECTRONIK EUROPA G.m.b.H. SIEMENSSTR. 22-34, 25462 RELLINGEN BEI HAMBURG, GERMANY
YAMAHA ELECTRONIQUE FRANCE S.A. RUE AMBROISE CROIZAT BP70 CROISSY-BEAUBOURG 77312 MARNE-LA-VALLEE CEDEX02, FRANCE
YAMAHA ELECTRONICS (UK) LTD. YAMAHA HOUSE, 200 RICKMANSWORTH ROAD WATFORD, HERTS WD18 7GQ, ENGLAND
YAMAHA SCANDINAVIA A.B. J A WETTERGRENS GATA 1, BOX 30053, 400 43 VÄSTRA FRÖLUNDA, SWEDEN
YAMAHA MUSIC AUSTRALIA PTY, LTD. 17-33 MARKET ST., SOUTH MELBOURNE, 3205 VIC., AUSTRALIA

YAMAHA CORPORATION
Printed in Malaysia  WN24720

The circled numbers and alphabets correspond to those in the Owner's Manual.

Les nombres et lettres dans un cercle correspondent à ceux du mode d'emploi.

■ Front panel/Face avant



■ Remote control/Boîtier de télécommande

